مذكرة شاملة
شرح - تدريب - أفكار

الصف الثالث الثانوي

2026 / 2027

★ ★ ★ ★ ★

مذكرة قواعد اللغة

الإنجليزية

ENGLISH

GRAMMAR MASTERY

دليلك لإتقان القواعد
وثقتك في الامتحان

القواعد ببساطة... والتفوق بثقة

- شرح مبسط وواضح
- أمثلة كثيرة ومترجمة
- تدريبات متنوعة على كل قاعدة
- أفكار الامتحانات المتوقعة
- مراجعة شاملة قبل الامتحان

- منهج الوزارة محدث 2026 / 2027
- مناسبة لجميع مستويات الطالب
- تدريبات شاملة بأساليب متنوعة
- تبسيط ذكي للمفاهيم
- جميع القواعد في مكان واحد

إعداد

مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

موبايل وواتس
01095006994

منهج قوي
شرح رائع
نجاح مضمون

ابدأ الآن
لتتفوق دائمًا

فهرس المذكرة

أقوى مذكرة قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية

للصف الثالث الثانوى

م	الموضوع	رقم الصفحة
1	المقدمة : أهمية القواعد وكيفية استخدام المذاكرة	3
2	خطة المذاكرة المقترحة	4
3	شرح استخدام المذكرة	5
4	**الوحدة الأولى : أزمنة المضارع (Present Tenses)**	6 – 13
	القواعد – الأمثلة – الملاحظات – الأخطاء الشائعة – تدريبات	
5	**الوحدة الثانية : أزمنة الماضي (Past Tenses)**	14 – 20
	القواعد – الأمثلة – الملاحظات – الأخطاء الشائعة – تدريبات	
6	**الوحدة الثالثة : المستقبل (Future Tenses)**	21 – 28
	القواعد – الأمثلة – الملاحظات – الأخطاء الشائعة – تدريبات	
7	**الوحدة الرابعة : المبني للمجهول (Passive Voice)**	29 – 36
	القواعد – الأمثلة – الملاحظات – الأخطاء الشائعة – تدريبات	
8	**الوحدة الخامسة : الأفعال الناقصة (Modal Verbs)**	37 – 44
	القواعد – الأمثلة – الملاحظات – الأخطاء الشائعة – تدريبات	
9	**الوحدة السادسة : الجمل المركبة والحالة الشرطية (Complex Sentences & Conditionals)**	45 – 50
	القواعد – الأمثلة – الملاحظات – الأخطاء الشائعة – تدريبات	
10	مراجعة شاملة ذهبية (1)	51 – 53
11	مراجعة شاملة ذهبية (2)	54 – 56
12	خريطة القواعد (Grammar Maps)	57
13	أهم الأخطاء الشائعة في القواعد	58
14	نصائح ذهبية لاجتياز الامتحان	59
15	الاختبار الشامل (1)	60 – 63
16	الاختبار الشامل (2)	64 – 67
17	الاختبار الشامل (3)	68 – 71
18	نموذج إجابة الاختبارات	72 – 74
19	ملخص القواعد في ورقة واحدة	75 – 80
20	كلمات أخيرة	81

إعداد

مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

Practice Makes Perfect

مع القواعد تصل للقمة

80 صفحة

★ ★ كن واثقاً ... النجاح يبدأ من القواعد ★ ★

كيف تستخدم هذه المذكرة؟

هذه المذكرة صُمِّمت لتكون دليلك الشامل لإتقان قواعد اللغة الإنجليزية خطوة بخطوة.
لتحقيق أقصى استفادة منها، اتبع الخطوات التالية بانتظام واجعلها عادة يومية:

1 اقرأ الشرح بعناية

ابدأ بقراءة شرح القاعدة كاملاً، ولا تتنقل لأي جزء آخر قبل أن تفهم الفكرة الأساسية والتكوين والاستخدام والكلمات الدالة.

2 انتبه للأمثلة

اقرأ جميع الأمثلة بعناية مع ترجمتها، وحاول أن تفهم الفكرة التي توضحها كل مثال.
الأمثلة هي المفتاح لفهم القاعدة وتطبيقها.

3 افهم ثم طبق

بعد الانتهاء من الشرح، ابدأ في حل التدريبات الخاصة بكل جزء مباشرة.
التطبيق العملي هو ما يثبت القاعدة في ذهنك.

4 راجع أخطاءك

بعد الحل، راجع إجاباتك جيداً وتعلم من أخطائك.
لا تتجاوز أي خطأ، بل افهم سببه وصححه.

5 دوّن ملاحظاتك الخاصة

اكتب الملاحظات المهمة، القواعد الاستثنائية، والكلمات الدالة في هامش الصفحة.
أو في دفتر خاص بك للمراجعة السريعة.

6 راجع بانتظام

المراجعة المنتظمة هي سر النجاح.
ارجع لما درسته كل فترة حتى لا تنساه.

7 اختبر نفسك

بعد الانتهاء من كل وحدة، حل الاختبار الخاص بها ثم اختبارات المراجعة الشاملة.
هذا يقيّم مستواك ويكشف نقاط ضعفك.

ابدأ الآن.. وتفوق دائمًا

النجاح لا يأتي بالصدفة، بل بالعمل والمثابرة.
كن واثقًا من نفسك، واستمر في المذاكرة، وستصل إلى هدفك بإذن الله.

"Practice makes perfect, and consistency makes excellence."
التدريب يصنع الإتقان، والاستمرار يصنع التميز.

الصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

الوحدة الأولى
1

Inside the World of Care

داخل عالم الرعاية

تهدف هذه الوحدة إلى تطوير مهاراتك في استخدام الأزمنة المركبة المرتبطة بالحاضر، مع التركيز على التعبير عن الخبرات، والاستمرارية، والأحداث التي لها علاقة بالحاضر.

أهداف التعلم

- أن تفهم التكوين والاستخدامات المختلفة للمضارع التام البسيط.
- أن تفهم التكوين والاستخدامات المختلفة للمضارع التام المستمر.
- أن تتجنب الأخطاء الشائعة في هذه الأزمنة.
- أن تتعرف على زمن المضارع التام البسيط وتستخدمه بدقة.
- أن تفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمستمر.
- أن تستخدم المبني للمجهول في المضارع التام.
- أن تتعرف على الكلمات الدالة لكل زمن.

خريطة القواعد في هذه الوحدة

الوحدة الأولى
Inside the World of Care

1. **Present Perfect Simple**
   - Form (التكوين)
   - Uses (الاستخدامات)
   - Signal Words (الكلمات الدالة)
   - Negative – Questions
2. **Present Perfect Passive**
   - Form (التكوين)
   - Uses (الاستخدامات)
   - Active ↔ Passive
   - Common Mistakes
3. **Present Perfect Continuous**
   - Form (التكوين)
   - Uses (الاستخدامات)
   - Signal Words (الكلمات الدالة)
   - Negative – Questions
4. **الفرق بين**
   - Present Perfect Simple & Present Perfect Continuous
5. **الفرق بين**
   - Present Perfect & Past Simple
6. **الكلمات الدالة**
   already – just – yet – ever – never – since – for – recently – lately – so far – up to now

ما الذي ستتعلمه في هذه الوحدة؟

- أشهر الأخطاء الشائعة وكيفية تجنبها
- أمثلة كثيرة من الحياة اليومية
- ملخصات ذهبية سهلة الحفظ للمراجعة السريعة
- استراتيجيات لحل الأسئلة الامتحانية بذكاء
- تدريبات متنوعة ومتدرجة لضمان الفهم والإتقان

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد القتاح محمد
موبايل وواتس
01095006994

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Present Perfect Simple

المضارع التام البسيط

تعريف الزمن

يستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال تاثيره مستمراً في الحاضر. أو حدث تم في وقت غير محدد في الماضي وله علاقة بالحاضر، أو حدث تم إنجازة للتو.

1 الثكوين (Form)

المثبت (Affirmative)	النفي (Negative)	السؤال (Question)
Subject + have / has + V3 (التصريف الثالث)	Subject + have / has + not + V3	Have / Has + Subject + V3 + ... ?
I have finished my homework. لقد أنهيت واجبي.	I have not finished my homework. لم أنه واجبي.	Have you finished your homework? هل أنهيت واجبك؟
She has visited London. لقد زارت لندن.	She hasn't visited London. لم تزر لندن.	Has she visited London? هل زارت لندن؟

ملاحظة:
• نستخدم (has) / she / it (has) و (have) مع I / you / we / they.

الاستخدامات (Uses)

1	**للتعبير عن خبرات الحياة** أي تجربة أو حدث حدث مرة واحدة على الأقل في حياة الشخص.	• I have ever been to Egypt. لقد زرت مصر من قبل.	كلمات دالة: ever – never before – once – twice
2	**للتعبير عن أحداث غير محددة في الماضي** حدث في وقت غير محدد في الماضي وله علاقة بالحاضر.	• They have watched this movie. لقد شاهدوا هذا الفيلم. • He has read the book. لقد قرأ الكتاب.	كلمات دالة: already – just – yet so far – up to now
3	**للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ويستمر حتى الآن** يبدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمراً في الحاضر وقد يستمر في المستقبل.	• I have lived in Luxor since 2018. لقد عشت في الأقصر منذ عام 2018. • She has worked here for three years. لقد عملت هنا لمدة ثلاث سنوات.	كلمات دالة: since – for how long
4	**للتعبير عن إنجازات حتى الآن** تستخدم للحديث عن عدد مرات حدوث شيء حتى وقت الحاضر.	• We have won five matches this season. لقد فزنا بخمس مباريات هذا الموسم. • I have written twenty letters so far. لقد كتبت عشرين رسالة حتى الآن.	كلمات دالة: so far – up to now until now
5	**للتعبير عن حدث تم للتو** حدث انتهى الآن وقريب جداً من وقت التحدث.	• She has just arrived. لقد وصلت للتو. • They have already left. لقد غادروا.	كلمات دالة: just – already recently – lately

كلمات دالة مهمة

already	بالفعل
just	لتو / للتو
yet	حتى الآن
ever	من قبل
never	أبداً
since	منذ
for	لمدة
recently	مؤخراً
lately	في الأونة الأخيرة
so far	حتى الآن
up to now	حتى الآن

الفرق بين (Present Perfect) و (Past Simple)

Present Perfect	Past Simple
حدث في وقت غير محدد في الماضي وله علاقة بالحاضر.	حدث في وقت محدد ومنتهي في الماضي.
يركز على النتيجة أو الأثر في الحاضر.	يركز على الحدث نفسة في الماضي.
يستخدم مع كلمات مثل: already, yet, ever, since, for	يستخدم مع كلمات مثل: yesterday, in 2020, last week

أخطاء شائعة

1 I have went to the market. ✗
◆ I have gone to the market.

2 She has wrote the letter. ✗
◆ She has written the letter.

3 Have you seen him yesterday? ✗
◆ Have you seen him?
(لأنه حدث غير محدد في الماضي)

4 I didn't went there. ✗
◆ I didn't go there.

5 I have finished it two days ago. ✗
◆ I finished it two days ago.
لأن الزمن محدد.

Exam Tip
إذا كان السؤال يحتوي على كلمات مثل: (already – yet – since – for – ever – just – for – yet – already)
فغالباً الزمن هو (Present Perfect Simple).

★ Inside the World of Care ★

Present Perfect Simple

المضارع التام البسيط

الكلمات الدالة (Signal Words)

تساعدنا هذه الكلمات على معرفة أن الزمن المستخدم هو المضارع التام البسيط.

up to now	so far	lately	recently	for	since	never	ever	yet	just	already
حتى الآن	حتى الآن	في الأونة الأخيرة	مؤخراً	لمدة	منذ	أبداً	من قبل	حتى الآن	لتو للتو	بالفعل

ملاحظة: ☆ كلمات مثل: – yesterday – ago – last week – Pesterday تدل على الماضي البسيط وليس المضارع التام البسيط.

الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والماضي البسيط

المضارع التام البسيط (Present Perfect Simple)	وجه المقارنة	الماضي البسيط (Past Simple)
يستخدم للحديث عن حدث في الماضي وله علاقة بالحاضر أو ما زال تأثيره مستمراً. I have visited Cairo. لقد زرت القاهرة.	الزمن	يستخدم للحديث عن وقت محدد في الماضي وانتهى تماماً. I visited Cairo last week. لقد زرت القاهرة الأسبوع الماضي.
يأتي مع كلمات لا تدل على وقت محدد. already – yet – since – for – ever – never	الكلمات الدالة	يأتي مع كلمات تدل على وقت محدد في الماضي. yesterday – last week – in 2019 – ago
يركز على النتيجة أو التأثير في الحاضر. He has finished his work. لقد أنهى عمله.	التركيز	يركز على وقت حدوث الفعل. He finished his work yesterday. لقد أنهى عمله أمس.
قد يستمر الفعل حتى الآن أو يكون قد انتهي لكن نتيجته ما زالت موجودة. We have seen that film. لقد شاهدنا ذلك الفيلم.	استمرار الحدث	الفعل حدث وانتهى. We saw that film last night. لقد شاهدنا ذلك الفيلم الليلة الماضية.

أكثر الأخطاء شيوعا

الخطأ	الصواب
1 I have went to the club. (خطأ لأن went من الماضي)	I have gone to the club. (الصواب: gone هو التصريف الثالث)
2 She has wrote a letter. (خطأ لأن wrote من الماضي)	She has written a letter. (الصواب: written هو التصريف الثالث)
3 He has been in Luxor in 2018. (خطأ لأن في 2018 وقت محدد)	He was in Luxor in 2018. (الصواب: نستخدم الماضي البسيط)
4 Have you seen him yesterday? (خطأ لأن yesterday وقت محدد)	Did you see him yesterday? (الصواب: نستخدم الماضي البسيط)
5 I have ever been to London. (خطأ: نستخدم ever في السؤال فقط)	I have never been to London. (الصواب: نستخدم never في الجملة المنفية)

Exam Tips

1. إذا وجدت كلمات مثل (since – for – already – yet – just) . فالأغلب أن الزمن سيكون (so far – up to now) المضارع التام البسيط.
2. إذا وجدت كلمات مثل (yesterday – last – ago – in 2010) فالأغلب أن الزمن سيكون الماضي البسيط.
3. لا تنس أن الفعل في المضارع التام البسيط يأتي في التصريف الثالث (V3).
4. ركز على معنى الجملة، هل النتيجة موجودة في الحاضر؟ إذا كانت الإجابة نعم ← استخدم المضارع التام البسيط.
5. في الأسئلة: نستخدم ever في السؤال، و never في الإجابة المنفية فقط.

أمثلة متنوعة

جمل إيجابية

1 I have already finished my homework.
لقد أنهيت واجبي بالفعل.
2 They have just arrived at the airport.
لقد وصلوا للتو إلى المطار.
3 He has worked here for three years.
لقد عمل هنا لمدة ثلاث سنوات.
4 We have seen this movie before.
لقد شاهدنا هذا الفيلم من قبل.
5 She has been ill since last Monday.
لقد كانت مريضة منذ يوم الإثنين الماضي.

جمل سلبية

1 I have not (haven't) finished my homework yet.
لم أنه واجبي بعد.
2 He has not (hasn't) seen his friend recently.
لم ير صديقه مؤخراً.
3 They have never been to Paris.
لم يذهبوا أبداً إلى باريس.
4 She hasn't studied for the test so far.
لم تدرس للاختبار حتى الآن.
5 We haven't decided what to do yet.
لم نقرر ماذا نفعل بعد.

أسئلة وإجابات قصيرة

1 Have you ever tried sushi?
Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
هل جربت السوشي من قبل؟
نعم، لقد جربت. / لا، لم أجرب.
2 Has she finished the report?
Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't.
هل انتهت من التقرير؟
نعم، لقد انتهت. / لا، لم تنته.
3 How long have you known him?
I have known him for two years.
منذ متى وأنت تعرفه؟
لقد عرفته لمدة سنتين.

Golden Tip
Practice time makes perfect, and understanding makes you excellent.
الممارسة تجعلك مثاليا، والفهم يجعلك متفوقا.

الوحدة الأولى
1

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Present Perfect Passive

المبني للمجهول في المضارع التام

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

تعريف يستخدم المبني للمجهول في المضارع التام عندما نريد التركيز على الفعل نفسه أو على المستقيل به، وليس علن قام بالفعل.

1 التكوين (Form)

has / have + been + P.P (Past Participle)
(التصريف الثالث للفعل)

ملحوظة هامة

نستخدم has مع المفرد (he, she, it) اسم مفرد)
ونستخدم have مع الجمع (I, you, we, they) أسماء جمع).

أمثلة

• The homework has been finished.	تم الانتهاء من الواجب.
• The homework hasn't been finished yet.	لم يتم الانتهاء من الواجب بعد.
• Have you been to Aswan?	هل زرت أسوان؟
• Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.	نعم، لقد زرت. / لا، لم أزر.

2 الاستخدامات (Uses)

نستخدم المبني للمجهول في المضارع التام في الحالات التالية:

1. عندما لا نعرف أو لا نذكر من قام بالفعل.
   • My bag has been stolen. تم سرقة حقيبتي.
2. عندما يكون الفعل أهم من الفاعل.
   • The bridge has been built. تم بناء الجسر.
3. عندما نركز على نتيجة الفعل.
   • The test has been passed. تم اجتياز الاختبار.
4. في الأخبار والتقارير والإعلانات.
   • The new rules have been announced.
   تم الإعلان عن القوانين الجديدة.
5. في التعليمات واللاقتات.
   • Visitors have been asked to keep quiet.
   تم طلب من الزوار الحفاظ على الهدوء.
6. عندما يكون من قام بالفعل غير مهم أو واضح.
   • The room has been cleaned.
   تم تنظيف الغرفة.

3 التحويل من المبني للمعلوم إلى المبني للمجهول (Active ↔ Passive)

المبني للمعلوم	المبني للمجهول (Passive)	ملاحظات
They have finished the project. لقد أنهوا المشروع.	The project has been finished (by them). تم الانتهاء من المشروع (من قبلهم).	نضع الفاعل بعد by إذا أردنا ذكره.
My father has written the letter. لقد كتب أبي الرسالة.	The letter has been written (by my father). تم كتابة الرسالة (من قبل أبي).	
Someone has broken the window. لقد كسر شخص ما النافذة.	The window has been broken. تم كسر النافذة.	نحذف by + الفاعل إذا كان غير مهم.

أخطاء شائعة (Common Mistakes)

1.	✗ The homework has finished.	✓ The homework has been finished.	لا ننسى (been) قبل التصريف الثالث في المبني للمجهول.
2.	✗ Have you been finished the work?	✓ Have you finished the work?	لا نستعمل been مع الأفعال التي ليس لها مبني للمجهول.
3.	✗ The book has been wrote.	✓ The book has been written.	نستخدم التصريف الثالث الصحيح للفعل (written) وليس (wrote).
4.	✗ The room has been clean.	✓ The room has been cleaned.	نستخدم التصريف الثالث (cleaned) وليس (clean).
5.	✗ I have been in Cairo since 2010.	✓ I have been to Cairo since 2010.	الفعل (be) لا يستخدم في المبني للمجهول مع (since / for).

تدريب سريع

ضع الفعل في جملة من المبني للمعلوم إلى المبني للمجهول في المضارع التام:

1. They have painted the walls. .....
2. The manager has sent the emails. .....
3. We have received the invitation. .....
4. Someone has taken my pen. .....

★ Inside the World of Care ★

Present Perfect Continuous

المضارع التام المستمر

تعريف يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتى الأن وقد يستمر في المستقبل.

1 التكوين (Form)

إجابات قصيرة Short Answers	المثبت (Affirmative)	النفي (Negative)	السؤال (Question)
• Yes, I have. / No, I haven't. نعم، لقد. / .لا، لم أفعل. • Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't. نعم، لقد. / .لا، لم تفعل.	Subject + have / has + been + V-ing ... They have been working here since 2019. لقد كانوا يعملون هنا منذ 2019.	Subject + have / has + not + been + V-ing ... I haven't been watching TV. لم أكن أشاهد التلفاز.	Have / Has + Subject + been + V-ing ... ? Have you been studying English? هل كنت تدرس الإنجليزية؟

نضيف been قبل التصريف (V-ing) في كل الجمل.

الاستخدامات (Uses)

1 التعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتى الأن.		• I have been living in Luxor since 2020. لقد أعيش في الأقصر منذ عام 2020.
2 التعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ويستمر لفترة من الوقت، مع التركيز على استمراره وليس على نتائجه.		• She has been studying for two hours. لقد كانت تدرس لمدة ساعتين.
3 التعبير عن حدث متكرر في الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتى الأن.		• They have been visiting their grandparents every weekend. لقد كانوا يزورون أجدادهم كل عطلة نهاية أسبوع.
4 التعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وقد يستمر في المستقبل.		• I have been working on this project all day, and I will continue working on it. لقد كنت أعمل على هذا المشروع طوال اليوم، وسأواصل العمل عليه.

كلمات دالة

since	منذ
for	لمدة
all day	طوال اليوم
all week	طوال الأسبوع
all month	طوال الشهر
lately	مؤخراً
recently	مؤخراً
so far	حتى الأن
up to now	حتى الأن
how long	منذ متى

Present Perfect Continuous و Present Perfect Simple

وجه المفارنة	Present Perfect Continuous	Present Perfect Simple
التركيز	يُركز على استمرارية الحدث. (How long)	يُركز على النتيجة. (Result)
الأسئلة الشائعة	How long + have / has + subject + been + V-ing? (منذ متى؟)	Have / Has + subject + V3? (هل ...؟)
الأمثلة	I have been reading this book for three hours. لقد كنت أقرأ هذا الكتاب منذ ثلاث ساعات.	I have read this book. لقد قرأت هذا الكتاب.
الكلمات الدالة	since – for – all day – lately – recently – so far – up to now	already – just – yet – ever – never

أخطاء شائعة

✗ I have living here since 2019.	✓ I have been living here since 2019.	تحتاج إلى (been) قبل التصريف الرابع.
✗ She has been to Cairo for 2 days.	✓ She has been in Cairo for 2 days.	نستخدم (in) مع الأماكن.
✗ How long you have been waiting?	✓ How long have you been waiting?	ترتيب السؤال يجب أن يكون صحيحاً.
✗ They has been working here since 2018.	✓ They have been working here since 2018.	مع (they) نستخدم (have).
✗ I have been finish my homework.	✓ I have finished my homework.	(فعل قلم بسيط. (finished) (been + V-ing) للاستمرارية.

Exam Tip

إذا كان السؤال يحتوي على منذ / لمدة / طوال اليوم / مؤخراً / حتى الأن = غالباً سيكون الزمن (Present Perfect Continuous).

• إذا كان السؤال يحتوي على / yet / already / just / ever / never = غالباً سيكون الزمن (Present Perfect Simple).

ركز على كلمات الدلالة: فهي مفتاح تحديد الزمن الصحيح.

تدريب سريع

ضع الفعل بين القوسين في المضارع التام المستمر :

1. I (study) ..... English for three years.
2. They (play) ..... football since morning.
3. She (not / sleep) ..... well lately.
4. How long (you / wait) ..... for the bus?
5. We (live) ..... in this house since 2015.

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

The Difference Between
Present Perfect Simple & Present Perfect Continuous
الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

معلومة مهمة

كلا الزمنين يتحدثان عن الحاضر ولهما علاقة بالماضي، ولكن بينهما فرق كبير في التركيز والاستخدام.

أوجه المفارنة الرئيسية

وجه المقارنة	Present Perfect Simple المضارع التام البسيط	Present Perfect Continuous المضارع التام المستمر
التركيز	يركز على النتيجة أو الإنجاز. Focus on the result. I have finished my homework. (لقد أنهيت واجبي.)	يركز على الاستمرارية أو المدة. Focus on the duration. I have been doing my homework. (لقد كنت أعمل على واجبي.)
السؤال	Have + subject + V3 ... ? Have you seen Ali? (هل رأيت علي؟)	How long + have/has + subject been + V-ing ... ? How long have you been waiting? (منذ متى وأنت تنتظر؟)
الاستخدام	• للحديث عن التجارب والخبرات. • للحديث عن أحداث في وقت غير محدد. • للحديث عن النتائج الحالية.	• للحديث عن أفعال بدأت في الماضي ولا تزال مستمرة حتي الآن. للتركيز على الفترة الزمنية. • مع كلمات مثل since – for – how long.
الكلمات الدالة	already – just – yet – ever – never so far – up to now – recently – lately (هذه الكلمات تدل على المضارع التام البسيط)	since – for – how long – all day all week – all month – lately – recently (هذه الكلمات تدل على المضارع التام المستمر)
صيغة الفعل	have + has + V3 التصريف الثالث للفعل	Have / has been + V-ing الفعل مضافاً إليه (ing)

فهم الفرق بالخط الزمني

Present Perfect Simple (النتيجة)

حدث في الماضي وانتهى، ونركز على النتيجة الآن.

- I have lost my key. لقد فقدت مفتاحي.
  (النتيجة: لا أستطيع فتح الباب الآن)
- They have visited the museum. لقد زاروا المتحف.
  (النتيجة: لديهم الخبرة الآن)

Present Perfect Continuous (الاستمرارية)

حدث بدأ في الماضي ولا يزال مستمراً حتى الآن.

- I have been looking for my key for an hour.
  لقد كنت أبحث عن مفتاحي منذ ساعة.
  (التركيز على مدة البحث المستمرة)
- They have been visiting the museum since morning.
  لقد كانوا يزورون المتحف منذ الصباح.
  (التركيز على الاستمرارية)

مزيد من الفروق المهمة

1 تستخدم المضارع التام البسيط عندما ننتهي من العمل.	✓ I have written the report. (لقد كتبت التقرير.) ✗ I have been written the report. (خطأ)
2 تستخدم المضارع التام المستمر عندما يكون العمل ما زال مستمراً.	✓ I have been writing the report for two hours. (أكتب التقرير منذ ساعتين.) ✗ I have wrote the report for two hours. (خطأ)
3 تستخدم المضارع التام البسيط مع كلمات مثل: just – already – yet	✓ He has just left. (لقد غادر للتو.) ✗ He has been just left. (خطأ)
4 تستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع كلمات مثل: since – for – how long	✓ She has been studying since morning. (هي تدرس منذ الصباح.) ✗ She has studied since morning. (غير مناسب إذا ما زالت تدرس)
5 تستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للأسئلة عن التجارب.	✓ Have you ever tried sushi? (هل جربت السوشي من قبل؟) ✗ How long have you ever tried sushi? (خطأ)

أمثلة إضافية توضح الفرق

Present Perfect Continuous (الاستمرارية)	Present Perfect Simple (النتيجة)
• I have been baking a cake. لقد كنت أخبز كعكة. (ما زلت في مرحلة الخبز)	• I have baked a cake. لقد خبزت كعكة. (الكعكة جاهزة الآن)
• We have been watching that movie. لقد كنا نشاهد ذلك الفيلم. (ما زلنا نشاهده)	• We have seen that movie. لقد شاهدنا ذلك الفيلم. (لدينا الخبرة)

Exam Tips

- إذا كان السؤال يسأل عن مدة زمنية، فالغالب أنه يحتاج (مضارع تام مستمر).
- إذا كان السؤال يسأل عن التجربة أو النتيجة، فالغالب أنه يحتاج (مضارع تام بسيط).
- انتبه للكلمات الدالة فهي مفتاح اختيار الزمن الصحيح.

الوحدة الأولى 1

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Signal Words – Common Mistakes & Exam Tips

الكلمات الدالة – أخطاء شائعة – نصائح الامتحان

Key Words (الكلمات الدالة)

Word الكلمة	Present Perfect Simple المضارع التام البسيط	Present Perfect Continuous المضارع التام المستمر
already بالفعل	✓ (جملة منتهية) I have already eaten.	✗ (لا نستخدمها عادة)
just لتو / الآن	✓ I have just finished.	✗ (لا نستخدمها عادة)
yet حتى الآن	✓ (في النفي والسؤال) Have you finished yet?	✓ (في النفي والسؤال) Haven't you finished yet?
ever من قبل	✓ (في السؤال) Have you ever been there?	✓ (في السؤال) Have you ever been to London?
never أبداً	✓ I have never smoked.	✓ I have never been late.
since منذ	✓ (من نقطة في الماضي) I have lived here since 2018.	✓ (من نقطة في الماضي) I have been living here since 2018.
for لمدة	✓ (لمدة زمنية) I have known him for 5 years.	✓ (لمدة زمنية) I have been studying for 3 hours.
recently مؤخراً	✓ (للأحداث المنتهية) I have visited him recently.	✓ (للأحداث المستمرة) I have been busy recently.
lately في الآونة الأخيرة	✓ (للأحداث المنتهية) I have seen him lately.	✓ (للأحداث المستمرة) I have been tired lately.
so far حتى الآن	✓ I have done a lot so far.	✓ I have been working hard so far.
up to now حتى الآن	✓ We have achieved a lot up to now.	✓ We have been working up to now.

Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

الخلط بين زمنين مختلفين في نفس الجملة.

1. ✗ I have lived here since 2018 and I live here now. (خطأ)
   ✓ I have lived here since 2018 and I still live here now. (صحيح)

نستخدم (for) مع نقطة زمنية.

2. ✗ I have known him for 2010. (خطأ)
   ✓ I have known him since 2010. (صحيح)

نستخدم (since) مع فترة زمنية.

3. ✗ I have studied English since two hours. (خطأ)
   ✓ I have studied English for two hours. (صحيح)

ننسي التضعيف في التصريف الثالث بعد (have/has).

4. ✗ She has write a letter. (خطأ)
   ✓ She has written a letter. (صحيح)

نستخدم (been) في المضارع التام البسيط.

5. ✗ I have been visited Luxor. (خطأ)
   ✓ I have visited Luxor. (صحيح)

ننسى (not) في النفي.

6. ✗ I have finished my work yet. (خطأ)
   ✓ I haven't finished my work yet. (صحيح)

نستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للحدث المنتهي.

7. ✗ I have been lost my key. (خطأ)
   ✓ I have lost my key. (صحيح)

Exam Tips (نصائح الامتحان)

1. إذا كان السؤال يحتوي على كلمات (since / for / already / yet/ ...) فكر فوراً في زمن المضارع التام.
2. • حدد هل الحدث منتهٍ أم مستمر:
   • منتهي → استخدم المضارع التام البسيط.
   • مستمر والى الآن → استخدم المضارع التام المستمر.
3. • في السؤال، ركز على الكلمات الدالة لأنها مفتاح الإجابة الصحيح.
4. في النفي، نستخدم (not) بعد (have / has) مباشرة.
5. • لا تستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تأتي عادة في الاستمرارية مثل: ... know – believe – have – like – love – want . إلخ.
6. اقرأ السؤال كاملاً قبل الإجابة، ولا تتسرع في اختيار الزمن.

كيف تختار الزمن المناسب؟

هل ارتبط الحدث بزمن غير محدّد في الماضي؟
(e.g. I have visited Egypt.)

- Yes → Use Present Perfect Simple المضارع التام البسيط
- No → هل يستمر الحدث وما زال مستمراً في الوقت الحالي؟ (e.g. I have been studying.)
  - Yes → Use Present Perfect Continuous المضارع التام المستمر
  - No → Think again فكر مرة أخرى

Choose the correct tense : اختر الزمن الصحيح ☆☆

1. I have _____ (finish / finished / finishing) my dinner already.
2. She has been _____ (study / studying / studied) since 5 p.m.
3. Have you ever _____ (visit / visited / visiting) Alexandria?
4. We haven't seen our teacher _____ (since / for) last week.
5. He has _____ (write / written / writing) three books so far.
6. I have been _____ (wait / waiting / waited) for you for an hour.
7. The room has been _____ (clean / cleaned / cleaning) by the maid.
8. They have _____ (never see / never saw / never seen) such a view.
9. She has lived in Luxor _____ (since / for) 2016.
10. Have they already _____ (left / leave / leaving)?

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Present Perfect Simple

تدريبات متدرجة على المضارع التام البسيط

A Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I have just ..... my homework.
   a) finish b) finished c) finishing d) finishes
2. She has ..... in this school since 2020.
   a) study b) studies c) studied d) studying
3. Have you ever ..... to Aswan?
   a) go b) went c) gone d) going
4. We haven't ..... the news yet.
   a) hear b) heard c) hearing d) hears
5. He has already ..... breakfast.
   a) have b) has c) having d) had
6. They have lived in Luxor ..... five years.
   a) since b) for c) ago d) last
7. I have never ..... such a beautiful place.
   a) see b) saw c) seen d) seeing
8. ..... you ever try sushi?
   a) Have b) Has c) Do d) Does
9. My father has ..... a new car.
   a) buy b) buys c) bought d) buying
10. She hasn't returned my book ..... .
    a) already b) just c) yet d) ever

B Correct the mistakes : صحح الخطأ

1. I have went to Cairo yesterday.
2. She has watched this film two days ago.
3. We hasn't finished our project yet.
4. Have you ever seen Mount Sinai?
5. He has wrote three stories so far.
6. They have been to Germany last year.
7. My brother has never play tennis.
8. I have already did my homework.
9. She has lived here since five years.
10. Have they seen the new museum yet?

C Complete the sentences : أكمل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة

(already – yet – since – for – just – ever – never – so far – up to now)

1. I have ..... finished my assignment. (before now)
2. We haven't received the email ..... . (not until now)
3. He has lived in this city ..... 2018. (from 2018 until now)
4. They have known each other ..... five years. (period)
5. Have you ..... visited the new library? (in your life)
6. She has ..... eaten such delicious food. (before in her life)
7. I have studied English ..... three hours today.
8. We have seen that movie ..... . (in a recent time)
9. He has worked very hard ..... now.
10. She has ..... left the party. (a short time ago)

D Rewrite using (have – has) + the correct form : أعد كتابة الجمل مستخدماً (have) + التصريف الثالث الصحيح للفعل

1. I (write) three emails so far. → I have .....
2. She (not/see) a doctor yet. → .....
3. They (buy) a new house. → .....
4. He (lose) his keys. → .....
5. We (be) to Paris two times. → .....
6. My father (finish) his work just now. → .....
7. You (not/meet) my sister yet. → .....
8. Ahmed (already/eat) lunch. → .....

E Do as shown between brackets : نفذ ما بين القوسين

1. I have visited the museum. (Make a question) .....
2. She has been to Spain. (Make a negative) .....
3. They have finished the work. (Ask a question) .....
4. He has just sent the message. (Change into negative) .....
5. We have known each other for 3 years. (Ask a question) .....
6. My brother has never watched this series. (Make it positive) .....
7. I have lost my pen. (Make a question) .....
8. She has already cleaned the room. (Change into negative) .....
9. Have you ever tried Italian food? (Answer) .....
10. He has lived here since 2015. (Ask a question) .....

F Write a paragraph (5 sentences) using Present Perfect Simple : اكتب فقرة من 5 جمل باستخدام المضارع التام البسيط

Ideas to help you : (أفكار تساعدك)

- something you have done
- something you haven't done
- how long (since / for)
- someone you have met
- your feelings or opinion

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

الوحدة الأولى 1

★★ Inside the World of Care ★★

Present Perfect Continuous & Passive

تدريبات متدرجة على المضارع التام المستمر والمبني للمجهول

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

A Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I have been studying English ..... three hours.
   a) since b) for c) ago d) last
2. She has been waiting for the bus ..... morning.
   a) since b) for c) ago d) last
3. They have been living in this house ..... 2015.
   a) since b) for c) ago d) last
4. How long have you been learning French?
   a) since b) for c) ago d) last
5. We have been playing football ..... noon.
   a) since b) for c) ago d) last
6. The work has been finished ..... the workers.
   a) by b) to c) from d) for
7. The letters have been written ..... my sister.
   a) by b) to c) from d) for
8. The museum has been cleaned ..... now.
   a) by b) to c) from d) for
9. The bridge has been built ..... 2018.
   a) in b) since c) for d) on
10. The problem has been solved ..... the team.
    a) by b) to c) from d) for

B Correct the mistakes : صحح الخطأ

1. I have been to Cairo since two years.
2. She has been waiting here for last Monday.
3. They has been playing football for three hours.
4. The room has been clean by the maid.
5. The homework has been finish yet.
6. My father has been write many books.
7. We have been knowing each other since 2019.
8. The car has been making in Egypt.
9. The window has been broke.
10. How long have you been knowing him?

C Complete the sentences : أكمل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة

(since – for – how long – lately – recently – so far – up to now)

1. I have been feeling tired ..... last week.
2. She has been working here ..... 2017.
3. How long have you been learning English? – ..... two years.
4. We have been receiving a lot of emails ..... .
5. They have been watching TV ..... this evening.
6. My father has been reading the newspaper ..... an hour.
7. The team has been training hard ..... the competition.
8. He has been talking on the phone ..... .
9. Have you been busy ..... ?
10. I haven't seen him ..... .

D Put the verbs between brackets in the Present Perfect Continuous
ضع الأفعال بين القوسين في المضارع التام المستمر

1. I (study) ..... English for two hours.
2. She (wait) ..... for her friend since 3 p.m.
3. They (play) ..... tennis since morning.
4. We (watch) ..... a new series lately.
5. He (work) ..... on this project all week.
6. My brother (learn) ..... guitar for a year.
7. Ahmed (live) ..... in Luxor since 2020.
8. How long (you / read) ..... this book?
9. The workers (build) ..... the new road.
10. Rain (fall) ..... since last night.

E Rewrite using (be + P.P.) : أعد كتابة الجمل التالية بالمبني للمجهول (المضارع التام)

1. They have written three emails. → .....
2. Someone has stolen my bag. → .....
3. The teacher has explained the lesson. → .....
4. They have built a new bridge. → .....
5. He has repaired the computer. → .....
6. People have visited the museum. → .....
7. The chef has cooked a delicious meal. → .....
8. Someone has broken the window. → .....
9. They have planted many trees. → .....
10. The nurse has taken care of the patient. → .....

F Do as shown between brackets : نفذ ما بين القوسين

1 I have been studying for three hours. (Make it negative) .....
2 She has been waiting at the station since 5 p.m. (Make it a question) .....
3 They have been playing football since morning. (Ask a question) .....
4 We have been living here since 2016. (Make it negative) .....
5 He has been working on this project for a week. (Ask a question) .....
6 My mother has been cooking since noon. (Make it a question) .....
7 The book has been written by him. (Change into active) .....
8 The letters have been sent by Ali. (Change into active) .....
9 The problem has been solved by the team. (Change into active) .....
10 The building has been painted by the workers. (Change into active) .....

Quick Tips
نصائح سريعة

تستخدم (since) مع نقطة زمنية.
مثل: since 2010 / since last week
• تستخدم (for) مع فترة زمنية.
مثل: for two hours / for 5 days
• المضارع التام المستمر
يركز على المدة.
• المضارع التام البسيط
يركز على النتيجة.
في المبني للمجهول:
(be + past participle)
★ تم نذكر الفاعل في النهاية أو نحذفه.

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

The Present Perfect

تدريبات شاملة على المضارع التام

يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن:
- حدث الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتي الآن. (I have lived) حدث بدأ في الماضي
- حدث انتهي في الماضي وتبعاته موجودة الآن. (I have lost my keys.)
- خبرات في الحياة. (I have visited many countries.)

التكوين: have / has + التصريف التالت للفعل (V3)

الكلمات الدالة: since – for – already – yet – just – ever – never – recently – so far.

تذكر
- since مع نقطة زمنية.
- for مع مدة زمنية.
- already قبل الفعل التام.
- yet في الجملة النفية والسؤال.
- ever / never للسؤال عن الخبرات.

A Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I have never ..... such a beautiful place.
   a) see b) saw c) seen d) seeing
2. She has been working here ..... 2019.
   a) since b) for c) ago d) last
3. They have already ..... lunch.
   a) eat b) eats c) eaten d) eating
4. How long have you been learning English?
   a) last year b) since 2 years c) for 2 years d) in 2 years
5. My father has ..... his car.
   a) wash b) washed c) washing d) washes
6. Have you ever ..... to Japan?
   a) go b) went c) been d) gone
7. I haven't ..... my homework yet.
   a) finish b) finished c) finishing d) finishes
8. We have ..... all the answers.
   a) find b) found c) finding d) finds
9. She has just ..... an interesting book.
   a) read b) reads c) reading d) readed
10. The team has ..... the match.
    a) win b) won c) wins d) winning

B Put the words in the correct order : رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. here / I / 2015 / have / lived / since.
2. my homework / I / have / just / finished.
3. they / the film / have / yet / not / seen.
4. been / how long / you / studying / have / English / ?
5. she / Cairo / for / has / two days / been.
6. ever / visited / have / you / Turkey / ?
7. the letter / has / not / arrived / yet.
8. he / many / has / already / books / read.
9. we / since / this morning / working / have / been.
10. has / the / yet / not / bus / arrived.

C Complete the sentences with (since / for). أكمل الجمل باستخدام : (since / for)

1. I have been here ..... Monday.
2. She has been a teacher ..... ten years.
3. We have known each other ..... 2018.
4. They have been living in Luxor ..... a long time.
5. My brother has been playing football ..... he was 8.
6. I have been waiting for you ..... an hour.
7. He has worked in this company ..... last June.
8. The children have been in the park ..... morning.
9. I have studied French ..... two years.
10. She has been feeling sick ..... yesterday.

D Write sentences using the given words. اكتب جملاً باستخدام الكلمات المعطاة

1. (live / here / since / 2017)
2. (just / finish / my homework) .....
3. (ever / try / Italian food) .....
4. (study / English / for / five years) .....
5. (not / see / him / yet) .....
6. (already / eat / lunch) .....
7. (work / here / since / last year) .....
8. (be / to / Sharm / twice) .....
9. (lose / my keys / again) .....
10. (know / her / for / a long time) .....

E Read the situations and write sentences using the Present Perfect. اقرأ المواقف واكتب جملاً بالمضارع التام

1. You started studying English 3 years ago and you still study now.
   (تدرس الإنجليزية منذ 3 سنوات وما زلت تدرس الآن.)
2. You finished your homework a few minutes ago.
   (لقد انتهيت من واجبك منذ قليل.)
3. You have never been to Egypt before.
   (لم تزر مصر من قبل.)
4. You have known your best friend for 6 years.
   (لقد تعرفت على أفضل صديق لك منذ 6 سنوات.)
5. You have lost your pen. (مرة أخرى)
   (لقد فقدت قلمك مرة أخرى.)
6. You started working in this company 2 years ago.
   (تعمل في هذه الشركة منذ سنتين.)
7. You have just seen a very interesting movie.
   (لقد شاهدت للتو فيلماً مثيراً جداً.)
8. You have been waiting for the bus for 30 minutes.
   (لقد انتظرت الحافلة لمدة 30 دقيقة.)
9. You have already booked your ticket.
   (لقد حجزت تذكرتك بالفعل.)
10. You have never tried scuba diving.
    (لم تجرب الغوص من قبل.)

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- since 2010 / since last week. :مع نقطة زمنية (since) استخدم
- for two hours / for 5 days. :زمنية (for) استخدم
- I have already eaten. : لمع شخصية قبل (already)
- I haven't finished yet. : في نهاية الجملة (yet) في الجمل النفية استخدم
- I have just arrived. :بكسين المعنى (just) مع
- Have you ever ...? :(ever / never) للسؤال عن الخبرات استخدم

الوحدة الثانية 2

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

The Power of Machines

قوة الآلات

في هذه الوحدة سنتعلم كيف ننقل الكلام من الصيغة المباشرة إلى الصيغة غير المباشرة ،
ونتعرف على القواعد الخاصة بتغيير الأزمنة ، الضمائر ، كلمات الزمان والمكان ،
وكذلك الأوامر والطلبات والنصائح والاقتراحات والتحذيرات والدعوات.
هذه المهارات تساعدك على التعبير عن ما يقوله الناس بصورة صحيحة ومتقنة.

Vocabulary Preview

- report
- statement
- change
- command
- request
- advise
- warn
- invite

Learning Objectives أهداف التعلم

في نهاية هذه الوحدة ستكون قادرًا على:

- Understand reported speech (statements).
- Change tenses correctly (backshift).
- Change pronouns and time/place expressions.
- Use say and tell correctly.
- Report commands and requests.
- Give and report advice, suggestions, warnings and invitations.
- Report yes / no and wh- questions.
- Avoid common mistakes in reported speech.
- Apply all the rules in different exercises.
- Write what people said correctly.
- Use reported speech in real-life situations.
- Prepare well for exams with confidence.

خريطة قواعد الوحدة

Unit 2
The Power of Machines
قوة الآلات

1. **Reported Statements**
   الجمل الخبرية المنقولة
   say / tell – التكوين – النعوين
   حذف علامات الاقتباس واستخدام that
2. **Backshift (Tense Changes)**
   تحويل الأزمنة
   تغيير الأزمنة عند النقل إلى الماضي
   (الحاضر إلى ماض، الماضي إلى ماض .....)
3. **Pronouns Changes**
   تغيير الضمائر
   تغيير ضمائر الفاعل، المفعول والملكية عند النقل
4. **Time & Place Expressions**
   تغيير كلمات الزمان والمكان
   (now → then / today → that day / here → there / this → that ...)
5. **Say & Tell**
   أفعال النقل (say / tell)
   الفرق بينهما + القواعد مع أمثلة كثيرة
6. **Commands**
   الأوامر
   الأمر المثبت والمنفي (tell / order / ask)
7. **Requests**
   الطلبات
   طلب الشيء بطريقة مهذبة (ask + object + to-inf.)
8. **Advice & Suggestions**
   النصائح والاقتراحات
   (advise / suggest + object + to-inf.)
9. **Warnings**
   التحذيرات
   تحذير من فعل أو عدم فعل شيء (warn + object + to / not to-inf.)
10. **Invitations**
    الدعوات
    دعوة شخص لفعل شيء (invite + object + to-inf.)
11. **Reported Questions**
    الأسئلة المنقولة
    أسئلة نعم / لا و الأسئلة بأدوات الاستفهام
12. **Common Mistakes & Exam Tips**
    الأخطاء الشائعة ونصائح الامتحان
    أهم الأخطاء – أفكار الامتحانات – ملخص ذهبي

ملاحظة مهمة

كل قاعدة في هذه الوحدة سنُعلمها بالتفصيل مع أمثلة عديدة وتدريبات متنوعة
حتى تصبح قادرًا على استخدام الكلام المنقول بثقة وسهولة.

الوحدة الثانية 2

للصف الثالث الثانوي 2026 / 2027

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Reported Statements

الجمل الخبرية المنقولة

تستخدم الكلام المنقول عندما نريد أن ننقل ما قاله شخص أخر دون أن تستخدم كلماته الحرفية. في الكلام المنقول، نحذف علامات الاقتباس، ونغير بعض الكلمات مثل الأزمنة والضمائر وأدوات الزمان والمكان حسب قواعد محددة.

We use reported speech when we want to report what someone said without using their exact words. In reported speech, we remove quotation marks and change some words such as tenses, pronouns, time and place expressions according to rules.

Key Words

- report (v.) يتقل
- statement (n.) جملة حملة
- say (v.) يقول
- tell (v.) يخبر
- that (conj.) أن
- change (v.) يغير

1 What is Reported Statements? ما هي الجمل الخبرية المنقولة؟

هي الجمل التي ننقل فيها ما قاله شخص ما (جملة خبرية) إلى شخص آخر.

تبدأ غالباً بـ: She told me (that) ... / He said (that) ... فلا تنخدع بك.

(that) تكون اختيارية في معظم الحالات.

2 Form (التكوين)

Say (يقول)

Subject + said + (that) + clause

(I / you / we / they / he / she / it / name) مع الضمائر

ولا يتبعه مفعول به.

Tell (يخبر)

Subject + told + object + (that) + clause

يُستخدم مع مفعول به (شخص).

مثل: me – him – her – us – them – Ali – my friend ...

Compare (قارن)

He said (that) he was tired. (لا يوجد مفعول به)

He told me (that) he was tired. أخبرني (بأنه) كان متعبا. (يوجد مفعول به: me)

3 General Rules (القواعد العامة)

نحذف علامات الاقتباس (" ").

"I like football." → He said (that) he liked football.

2. تستخدم (that) بعد فعل القول، وهي اختيارية في الجمل الخبرية.
   He said (that) he was busy. He said he was busy.
3. نغير الأزمنة (Backshift) حسب القاعدة.
4. نغير الضمائر حسب موقع المتحدث والمخاطب.
5. نغير أدوات الزمان والمكان.
6. نستخدم فعل مساعد أو نفظ في نهاية الجملة المنقولة.

4 Examples (أمثلة شاملة)

	Direct Speech الكلام المباشر	Reported Speech الكلام المنقول	Explanation الشرح
1	I am watching TV. أنا أشاهد التلفاز.	He said (that) he was watching TV. قال (إنه) كان يشاهد التلفاز	am → was (Present Continuous → Past Continuous)
2	We live in Luxor. نحن نعيش في الأقصر.	They said (that) they lived in Luxor. قالوا (إنهم) كانوا يعيشون في الأقصر.	live → lived (Present Simple → Past Simple)
3	I have finished my homework. لقد أنهيت واجبي المنزلي.	She said (that) she had finished her homework. قالت (إنها) كانت قد أنتهت واجبها.	have finished → had finished (Present Perfect → Past Perfect)
4	He will travel tomorrow. سوف يسافر غداً	He said (that) he would travel the next day. قال (إنه) سوف يسافر في اليوم التالي.	will → would tomorrow → the next day
5	They can speak English. يمكنهم التحدث الإنجليزية	He told me (that) they could speak English. أخبرني (أنهم) يستطعون التحدث الإنجليزية.	can → could
6	I must study hard. يجب أن أدرس بجد.	He said (that) he had to study hard. قال (إنه) كان عليه أن يدرس بجد.	must → had to (حسب السياق الماضي)
7	She is here now. إنها هنا الآن.	He said (that) she was there then. قال (إنها) كانت هناك حينئذ.	here → there now → then
8	I wrote this letter yesterday. كتبت هذه الرسالة بالأمس	He said (that) he had written that letter the day before. قال (إنه) كان قد كتب تلك الرسالة في اليوم السابق.	wrote → had written yesterday → the day before
9	We are going to the club. نحن ذاهبون إلى النادي.	He said (that) they were going to the club. قال (أنهم) كانوا ذاهبين إلى النادي.	are going → were going
10	I'm reading a book. أنا أقرأ كتابًا.	She told me (that) she was reading a book. أخبرتني (أنها) كانت تقرأ كتابًا.	I → she am reading → was reading

5 Notes (ملاحظات مهمة)

- لا نستخدم (that) مع الضمائر (I).
  He said I was late. (X) that
- لا نستخدم (that) بعد الأسماء.
- He said (that) Ali was ill.

في الأسئلة: نستخدم (Yes/No & if / whether) أو (Wh-questions) أدوات السؤال المناسبة. (سيتم شرحه في صفحة لاحقة).

6 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- He said me he was tired. (X) → He told me he was tired. (✓)
- She said to me that she is busy. (X)
  → She told me that she was busy. (✓)
- They said that they will come tomorrow. (X)
  → They said that they would come the next day. (✓)
- He said (that) I am hungry. (X) → He said I was hungry. (✓)

الوحدة الثانية 2

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Reported Statements

الجمل الخبرية المنقولة

للصف الثالث الثانوي 2026 / 2027

1 Backshift (Changes in Tenses) تغيير الأزمنة

عند نقل الكلام من شخص لآخر، نغير زمن الفعل حسب قاعدة معينة تُسمى Backshift ، أي الرجوع بزمن الفعل خطوة واحدة إلى الماضي.

Backshift Tip
تخيل أنك ترجع الزمن خطوة واحدة عند نقل الكلام.

	Direct Speech الكلام المباشر	Reported Speech الكلام المنقول	Explanation الشرح
1	I work hard every day. أعمل بجد كل يوم.	He said (that) he worked hard every day. قال (أنه) كان يعمل بجد كل يوم.	Present Simple → Past Simple
2	She is reading a book now. إنها تقرأ كتابًا الآن.	She told me (that) she was reading a book then. أخبرتني (أنها) كانت تقرأ كتابًا حينها.	Present Continuous → Past Continuous
3	They have finished their work. لقد أنهوا عملهم.	They said (that) they had finished their work. قالوا (أنهم) كانوا قد أنهوا عملهم.	Present Perfect → Past Perfect
4	I went to the club yesterday. ذهبت إلى النادي أمس	He said (that) he had gone to the club the day before. قال (أنه) كان قد ذهب إلى النادي اليوم السابق.	Past Simple → Past Perfect (عند الحاجة)
5	He was watching TV. كان يشاهد التلفاز.	He said (that) he had been watching TV. قال (أنه) كان قد كان يشاهد التلفاز.	Past Continuous → Past Perfect Continuous
6	I have been studying English for 3 years. لقد كنت أدرس الإنجليزية لمدة 3 سنوات	He said (that) he had been studying English for 3 years. قال (أنه) كان قد كان يدرس الإنجليزية لمدة 3 سنوات	Present Perfect Continuous → Past Perfect Continuous
7	I will visit my uncle tomorrow. سأزور عمي غدًا.	He said (that) he would visit his uncle the next day. قال (أنه) كان سيزور عمه في اليوم التالي.	will → would
8	She can speak French. يمكنها أن تتكلم الفرنسية	She said (that) she could speak French. قالت (أنها) يمكنها أن تتكلم الفرنسية.	can → could
9	You must study hard. يجب عليك أن تدرس بجد.	He said (that) I had to study hard. قال (أنه) كان علي أن أدرس بجد.	must → had to

Pronouns Changes تغيير الضمائر

Direct Speech المباشر	Reported Speech المنقول
I	he / she
we	they
you	he / she / they (in some cases)
my	his / her
our	their
me	him / her
us	them
your	his / her / their

ملاحظة
تغيير الضمائر يعتمد على من يتكلم ومن تنقل عنه الكلام.

Time Expressions تعبيرات الزمان

Direct Speech المباشر	Reported Speech المنقول
now	then
today	that day
yesterday	the previous day
tomorrow	the next day / the following day
ago	before
last week	the week before
next year	the following year
here	there
this	that
these	those

ملاحظة
تغيير كلمات الزمان والمكان مهم جدًا لكي تكون الجملة المنقولة صحيحة وواضحة.

Place Expressions تعبيرات المكان

Direct Speech المباشر	Reported Speech المنقول
here	there
this place	that place
these places	those places
in this room	in that room
at this time	at that time

ملاحظة
عند النقل إلى الماضي، المكان والزمان يتغيران عكس الإشارة.

5 More Examples أمثلة إضافية

1. He said, "I play tennis every Saturday."
   → He said (that) he played tennis every Saturday.
2. She said, "I am going to the market."
   → She said (that) she was going to the market.
3. They said, "We have eaten lunch."
   → They said (that) they had eaten lunch.
4. I said, "I saw a beautiful bird."
   → I said (that) I had seen a beautiful bird.
5. He said, "I will help you."
   → He said (that) he would help me.
6. She said, "You must finish your homework."
   → She said (that) I had to finish my homework.
7. We said, "We are happy."
   → We said (that) we were happy.
8. He said to me, "Don't be late."
   → He told me not to be late.

6 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ He said he is tired. (X)
  → He said he was tired. (✓) (تغير الزمن)
- ✗ She said to me that she busy. (X)
  → She told me that she was busy. (✓) (نستخدم was)
- ✗ They said that they come tomorrow. (X)
  → They said that they would come the next day. (✓) (نغير will)
- ✗ He said me that he has a car. (X)
  → He told me that he had a car. (✓) (نستخدم had)
- ✗ I said that I am happy. (X)
  → I said that I was happy. (✓) (تغير الزمن)

7 Exam Tips نصائح للامتحان

1. اقرأ الجملة جيدًا وحدد زمن الفعل.
2. تذكر قاعدة Backshift.
3. غيّر الضمائر حسب السياق.
4. غيّر كلمات الزمان والمكان.
5. اختر فعل النقل المناسب (say / tell)
6. مراجعة الجملة بعد النقل قبل الاختيار.

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Reported Statements

الجمل الخبرية المنقولة

2 Say & Tell أفعال النقل

نستخدم أفعال النقل لنقل كلام شخص أخر بدون استخدام علامتي الاقتباس (" ") .
أشهر أفعال النقل هي: "say و "tell.

1 Say (يقول)

يستخدم say قبل الجملة مباشرة بدون مفعول به.

Subject + said + (that) + clause

- Ali said, "I live in Luxor."
  ➡ Ali said (that) he lived in Luxor.
- She said, "We are happy."
  ➡ She said (that) they were happy.

2 Tell (يخبر)

يستخدم tell دائماً مع مفعول به (شخص أو اسم).

Subject + told + object + (that) + clause

- Ali told me, "I live in Luxor."
  ➡ Ali told me (that) he lived in Luxor.
- She told her friends, "We are happy."
  ➡ She told her friends (that) they were happy.

3 Compare مقارنة

Say يقول		Tell يخبر
• يدون مفعول به. • نستخدمه قبل الجملة مباشرة. • يمكن استخدامه مع المحادثات العامة. • نستخدمه مع (I – we)	التكوين الاستخدام	• مع مفعول به دائماً. • نستخدمه لإخبار شخص محدد. • نستخدمه في المحادثات الشخصية. • نستخدمه مع (She (you – I shee – she
مثال He said, "I am tired." ➡ He said (that) he was tired. We said, "We will help you." ➡ We said (that) we would help him.	المثال	مثال He told me, "I am tired." ➡ He told me (that) he was tired. They told us, "We will help you." ➡ They told us (that) they would help us.

4 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. He said, "I will visit my uncle."
   He said (that) he _____ his uncle.
   a) visits b) visited c) would visit d) will visit
2. She told me, "I can speak English."
   She told me (that) she _____ speak English.
   a) can b) could c) will d) is
3. Ali said, "We are going to the club."
   Ali said (that) they _____ going to the club.
   a) are b) were c) have been d) was
4. My father told me, "I have finished my work."
   My father told me (that) he _____ finished his work.
   a) has b) had c) is d) was
5. She said, "I like chocolate."
   She said (that) she _____ chocolate.
   a) likes b) liked c) will like d) would like
6. He told his friend, "I am reading a book."
   He told his friend (that) he _____ a book.
   a) reads b) read c) was reading d) has read
7. We said, "We will help you."
   We said (that) we _____ help him.
   a) will b) would c) are d) have
8. They told us, "We have lost our keys."
   They told us (that) they _____ lost their keys.
   a) has b) had c) were d) have been

5 Rewrite using say or tell أعد الكتابة باستخدام (say) أو (tell)

1. "I am hungry."
   He _____ (that) he was hungry.
2. "We will travel tomorrow."
   They _____ (that) they would travel the next day.
3. "I don't like coffee."
   She _____ me (that) she didn't like coffee.
4. "We are studying English."
   We _____ (that) we were studying English.
5. "I have a new car."
   My brother _____ me (that) he had a new car.
6. "We can solve the problem."
   They _____ (that) they could solve the problem.
7. "I won the match."
   Ali _____ his father (that) he had won the match.
8. "I will call you later."
   She _____ me (that) she would call me later.
9. "We are happy."
   The children _____ (that) they were happy.
10. "I have painted the room."
    My father _____ me (that) he had painted the room.

6 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ He said me that he is tired. (X)
  → He told me that he was tired. ✓
- ✗ She told that she likes singers. (X)
  → She said that she likes singers. ✓
- ✗ They say us they are coming. (X)
  → They told us (that) they were coming. ✓
- ✗ He said to me that he will help me. (X)
  → He told me (that) he would help me. ✓

7 Exam Tips إمتحانات

- ✓ استخدم say دون مفعول به.
- ✓ استخدم tell مع مفعول به دائماً.
- ✓ احذف علامات الاقتباس عند النقل.
- ✓ غير الأزمنة حسب قاعدة الازمنة.
- ✓ غير الضمائر وكلمات الزمان والمكان.
- ✓ أقرأ الجملة جيداً وحدد الفعل المناسب.

8 Golden Note ملحوظة ذهبية

تذكر دائماً:
تستخدم للجميع ...
tell تستخدم لشخص محدد.
الفهم الصحيح لأفعال النقل
يساعدك في الحصول على الدرجة الكاملة.

الوحدة الثانية 2

للصف الثالث الثانوي 2026 / 2027

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Reported Commands & Requests

الأوامر والطلبات المنقولة

عندما ننقل الأوامر والطلبات التي يقولها شخص لآخر، نستخدم أفعالاً خاصة مثل: advise – warn – order – tell – ask – order
ويأتي بعدها (to) المصدر (infinitive +t) مع مراعاة تغيير الضمائر وكلمات الزمان والمكان.

When we report commands and requests, we use certain verbs such as: tell, ask, order, advise, warn ... followed by (to + infinitive) and we change pronouns and time/place expressions when necessary.

Key Words

command	أمر
request	طلب
tell	أخبر
ask	طلب
order	أمر
advise	نصح
warn	حذر

1 Reported Commands الأوامر المنقولة

نستخدم الأفعال التالية لنقل الأوامر، ويأتي بعدها : (to + infinitive)

(Direct → Reported)	الاستخدام	الفعل المستخدم
Mum said, "Clean your room." ➡ Mum told me to clean my room.	يستخدم غالباً مع شخص معين.	tell
The teacher said, "Sit down." ➡ The teacher ordered us to sit down.	يستخدم للطلبات القوية.	order
He said to me, "Help your brother." ➡ He asked me to help my brother.	يستخدم لطلبات مهذبة.	ask
He said, "Study hard." ➡ He advised me to study hard.	يستخدم للنصائح.	advice
He said, "Don't talk in the exam." ➡ He warned me not to talk in the exam.	يستخدم للتحذيرات (الموجبة والسالبة).	warn

2 Reported Negative Commands الأوامر السلبية المنقولة

عند نقل أمر سلبي نستخدم: (not to + infinitive)
مع الأفعال التالية:

- tell / warn / order / ask

أمثلة:

1. Dad said, "Don't be late."
   ➡ Dad told me not to be late.
2. The doctor said, "Don't eat too much."
   ➡ The doctor advised me not to eat too much.
3. My teacher said, "Don't cheat."
   ➡ My teacher warned us not to cheat.

3 Reported Requests الطلبات المنقولة

التركيب

ask + object + to + infinitive

مثال:

- She said, "Please open the window."
  ➡ She asked me to open the window.
- He said to me, "Can you lend me your pen?"
  ➡ He asked me to lend him my pen.

ملاحظة

عندما يكون الطلب على شكل سؤال (Can/Could/Would you ... ?) نستخدم نفس التركيب.

مثال:

- "Can you help me?"
  ➡ He asked me to help him.

4 Other Useful Structures تراكيب وأفعال مفيدة أخرى

	التركيب	الاستخدام	(Direct → Reported)
1	advise + object + to + inf.	لإعطاء نصيحة	He said, "Eat healthy food." ➡ He advised me to eat healthy food.
2	warn + object + to / not to + inf.	للتحذير (موجب / سالب)	He said, "Be careful." ➡ He warned me to be careful. He said, "Don't touch the wires." ➡ He warned me not to touch the wires.
3	invite + object + to + inf.	لدعوة شخص لشيء	He said, "Come to my party." ➡ He invited me to his party.

5 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. He said, "Close the door."
   He told me ..... close the door.
   a) to b) not to c) do d) doing
2. The teacher said, "Don't make noise."
   The teacher warned us ..... make noise.
   a) to b) not to c) do d) doing
3. She said, "Please help me."
   She asked me ..... help her.
   a) to b) not to c) do d) doing
4. He said, "Sit down."
   He ordered us ..... sit down.
   a) to b) not to c) do d) doing
5. Dad said, "Don't be late."
   Dad told me ..... be late.
   a) to b) not to c) do d) did
6. He said, "Study hard."
   He advised me ..... study hard.
   a) to b) not to c) do d) doing
7. The doctor said, "Take this medicine."
   The doctor advised me ..... take that medicine.
   a) to b) not to c) do d) doing
8. She said, "Can you bring me some water?"
   She asked me ..... bring her some water.
   a) to b) not to c) do d) doing

6 Rewrite using the correct reported command or request.

أعد الكتابة باستخدام الأمر أو الطلب المنقول الصحيح.

1. "Don't use your phone in class." (tell me)
   He .....
2. "Please pass me the salt." (ask me)
   She .....
3. "Be quiet, please." (order us)
   The teacher .....
4. "Don't forget to lock the door." (warn you)
   I .....
5. "Help your mother." (tell your brother)
   Mother .....
6. "Drink more water." (advise me)
   The doctor .....
7. "Don't run in the corridor." (tell us)
   He .....
8. "Can you open the window?" (ask me)
   She .....
9. "Come to my birthday party." (invite me)
   My friend .....
10. "Don't waste your time." (warn me)
    He .....

7 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- He told me clean your room. (✗)
  → He told me to clean my room. (✓)
- She asked me not to helping her. (✗)
  → She asked me not to help her. (✓)
- He warned me to not be late. (✗)
  → He warned me not to be late. (✓)
- I advised him study hard. (✗)
  → I advised him to study hard. (✓)

8 Exam Tips نصائح للامتحان

- تذكر الأفعال الصحيحة لكل نوع أمر أو طلب.
- لا تنس (to) في الأوامر والطلبات.
- عند الأمر السلبي استخدم (not to + inf.).
- غير الضمائر وكلمات الزمان والمكان.
- أقرأ الجملة جيداً وحدد نوع الكلام المباشر.

9 Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

قاعدة ذهبية:
الأوامر والطلبات المنقولة
تحتاج فقط إلى
فعل التقل + (to) + المصدر)
ولا تحتاج إلى تغيير زمن الفعل.

الوحدة الثانية 2

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Reported Advice, Suggestions, Warnings & Invitations

النصائح والاقتراحات والتحذيرات والدعوات المنقولة

عند نقل النصائح والاقتراحات والتحذيرات والدعوات، نستخدم أفعال نقل معينة يتبعها (to + infinitive).
When we report advice, suggestions, warnings and invitations, we use some reporting verbs followed by (to + infinitive) and we change pronouns and time/place expressions when necessary.

Key Words

- advise ينصح
- suggest يقترح
- warn يحذر
- invite يدعو

1 Reported Advice
النصائح المنقولة

نستخدم الفعل:

advise + object + to + infinitive

لإعطاء نصيحة لشخص.

مثال:

- My father said, "Study hard."
  ➡ My father advised me to study hard.

2 Reported Suggestions
الاقتراحات المنقولة

نستخدم الفعل:

suggest + that + clause
(أي جملة)

مثال:

- She said, "Let's go to the park."
  ➡ She suggested that we (should) go to the park.

3 Reported Warnings
التحذيرات المنقولة

نستخدم الفعل:

warn + object + to / not to + infinitive

لتحذير شخص من فعل أو من عدم فعل شيء.

مثالان:

- The teacher said, "Don't touch the wires."
  ➡ The teacher warned us not to touch the wires.
- My mother said, "Be careful."
  ➡ My mother warned me to be careful.

4 Reported Invitations
الدعوات المنقولة

نستخدم الفعل:

invite + object + to + infinitive

لدعوة شخص لفعل شيء.

مثال:

- He said to me, "Come to my birthday party."
  ➡ He invited me to his birthday party.

5 Compare مقارنة سريعة

المعنى	الفعل المستخدم	مثال
يقدم نصيحة	advise + object + to + inf.	She advised her sister to eat healthy food. نصحت أختها أن تأكل طعامًا صحيًا.
يقترح فكرة	suggest + that + clause	He suggested that we travel by train. اقترح أن نسافر بالقطار.
يحذر من فعل	warn + object + to + inf.	They warned the children to stay away from danger. حذروا الأطفال من الابتعاد عن الخطر.
يحذر من عدم فعل	warn + object + not to + inf.	The doctor warned him not to smoke. حذره الطبيب من التدخين.
يدعو لفعل شيء	invite + object + to + inf.	She invited us to her wedding. دعتنا إلى حفل زفافها.
يدعو لشيء	invite + object + to + place	He invited me to his house. دعاني إلى بيته.

6 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. My teacher said, "Study carefully."
   My teacher advised me _____ study carefully.
   a) to b) that c) of d) for
2. She said, "Let's go to the cinema."
   She suggested _____ to the cinema.
   a) go b) going c) that we go d) to go
3. The woman said, "Don't cross the road."
   The woman warned the children _____ cross the road.
   a) to b) not to c) not d) don't
4. He said, "Be quiet in class."
   He warned us _____ quiet in class.
   a) to be b) to being c) be d) being
5. My uncle said, "Visit your grandmother."
   My uncle advised me _____ my grandmothter.
   a) visit b) visited c) visiting d) to visit
6. She said, "Why don't we take a taxi?"
   She suggested _____ a taxi.
   a) take b) taking c) that we take d) to take
7. My father said, "Don't stay up late."
   My father warned me _____ stay up late.
   a) to b) not c) don't d) not to
8. He said, "Come to my party."
   He invited me _____ his party.
   a) at b) in c) to d) on
9. The doctor said, "You should drink more water."
   The doctor advised me _____ more water.
   a) drink b) drinking c) to drink d) drinks
10. She said, "Shall we go for a walk?"
    She suggested _____ for a walk.
    a) go b) going c) that we go d) to go

7 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets: أعد كتابة الجمل مستخدمًا الكلمات بين القوسين

1. She said to me, "Don't speak loudly." (warn)
2. He said, "Let's clean the classroom." (suggest)
3. My mother said, "Take care of your health." (advise)
4. The man said, "Don't park here." (warn)
5. She said to her friend, "Come to my house." (invite)
6. The teacher said, "Study your lesson every day." (advise)
7. They said, "Let's plant some trees." (suggest)
8. My father said, "Don't use your phone while driving." (warn)
9. He said, "Come to the meeting tomorrow." (invite)
10. The doctor said, "Drink enough water." (advise)

8 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ He advised me study hard. (✗)
  → He advised me to study hard. (✓)
- ✗ She suggested we go to the mall. (✗)
  → She suggested that we (should) go to the mall. (✓)
- ✗ They warned us don't play with fire. (✗)
  → They warned us not to play with fire. (✓)
- ✗ He invited me come to his party. (✗)
  → He invited me to come to his party. (✓)

9 Exam Tips ☆ نصائح للامتحان

- تذكر الأفعال الخاصة بكل نوع من الكلام المنقول.
- كل هذه الأفعال يتبعها (to + inf.).
- انتبه لتغيير الضمائر وكلمات الزمان والمكان.
- اقرأ الجملة جيدًا وحدد معنى المتحدث الأصلي.
- اختر الفعل الأنسب للمعنى.

10 Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

تحديد نوع المعني هو المفتاح الصحيح لاختيار الفعل المناسب (نصيحة – اقتراح – تحذير – دعوة) ثم نضع دائمًا (to + infinitive) بعد الفعل المنقول.

الوحدة الثانية 2

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Reported Questions

الأسئلة المنقولة

عند نقل الأسئلة (Yes/No) أو (Wh-questions) نستخدم أفعالاً خاصة مثل: ask – want to know – wonder – want to know وغيرها، يليها (if / whether) أو Wh-word، ثم نغير الأزمنة، الضمائر، وكلمات الزمان والمكان.

When we report questions (Yes/No or Wh-questions), we use reporting verbs such as ask – want to know – wonder ... followed by (if / whether or Wh-word) and we change tenses, pronouns, and time/place expressions.

Key Words

ask	يسأل
want to know	يريد أن يعرف
wonder	يتساءل
if / whether	إذا
where / when / why ...	كلمات استفهام

1 Yes / No Questions الأسئلة بـ (Yes/No)

الكلام المباشر (Direct)	الكلام المنقول (Reported)
Are you coming? ➡ Yes, I am.	He asked me if / whether I was coming. ➡ Yes, I was.
Do you like coffee? ➡ No, I don't.	She wanted to know if / whether I liked coffee. ➡ No, I didn't.
Did you see the movie? ➡ Yes, I did.	Ali asked me if / whether I had seen the movie. ➡ Yes, I had.
Will you travel tomorrow? ➡ No, I won't.	My father wondered if / whether I would travel the next day. ➡ No, I wouldn't.

قواعد مهمة

1. تستخدم أو whether في الأسئلة (Yes/No).
2. تحذف الفاعل بعد (if / whether).
3. تغير الأزمنة حسب قاعدة الـ Backshift.
4. تغير الضمائر وكلمات الزمان والمكان.
5. في الإجابة نستخدم نفس التغييرات الزمنية.

ملاحظة

إذا كانت الجملة تحتوي على (will) في السؤال، تُبقى (would) في الجملة المنقولة.

Will you help me?
➡ He asked me if I would help him.

2 Wh- Questions الأسئلة بحروف الاستفهام

	الكلام المباشر (Direct)	الكلام المنقول (Reported)	التغيير الحاصل
1	Where do you live?	He asked me where I lived.	do → lived (Present Simple → Past Simple)
2	When did you arrive?	She wanted to know when I had arrived.	did → had (Past Simple → Past Perfect)
3	What are they doing?	Ali asked me what they were doing.	are → were (Present Continuous → Past Continuous)
4	Why are you late?	The teacher asked me why I was late.	am → was (Present Simple → Past Simple)
5	Who is your best friend?	My mother wondered who my best friend was.	is → was (Present Simple → Past Simple)
6	How will you do that?	He asked me how I would do that.	will → would

3 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. He asked me _____ I was coming.
   a) that b) if c) whether d) who
2. She wanted to know _____ I liked tea.
   a) where b) if c) when d) whose
3. Ali asked me _____ I had finished my homework.
   a) that b) if c) whether d) what
4. They wondered _____ we would travel the next day.
   a) if b) why c) where d) what
5. The teacher asked me _____ my father was.
   a) who b) that c) where d) when
6. He asked me _____ I would help him.
   a) if b) that c) whether d) when
7. My sister wanted to know _____ they were going.
   a) why b) that c) if d) where
8. She asked me _____ I had seen the match.
   a) whether b) if c) who d) whose
9. He wondered _____ I was happy.
   a) that b) what c) if d) where
10. The man asked me _____ I was doing.
    a) why b) what c) where d) if

4 Rewrite the questions into reported speech. أعد كتابة الأسئلة التالية في الكلام المنقول

1. "Are you ready?" (ask me)
   He asked me .....
2. "Did you call your mother?" (wonder)
   She wondered .....
3. "Where do you study?" (ask me)
   They asked me .....
4. "When will the train arrive?" (want to know)
   He wanted to know .....
5. "Why are you crying?" (ask me)
   My father asked me .....
6. "What do you want?" (wonder)
   She wondered .....
7. "Who bought this car?" (ask me)
   Ali asked me .....
8. "How did you solve the problem?" (want to know)
   The teacher wanted to know .....
9. "Are they playing football now?" (ask me)
   He asked me .....
10. "Will you come to the party?" (wonder)
    My friend wondered .....

5 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ He asked me that I was tired. (X)
  → He asked me if I was tired. (✓)
- ✗ She wanted to know where I am. (X)
  → She wanted to know where I was. (✓)
- ✗ He asked me if I will come. (X)
  → He asked me if I would come. (✓)
- ✗ They wondered what are you doing. (X)
  → They wondered what I was doing. (✓)

6 Exam Tips نصائح للامتحان

- اقرأ السؤال جيدًا وحدد نوعه (Yes/No أم Wh).
- اختر فعل النقل المناسب في للسياق.
- ضع (if / whether) في أسئلة أنعم (Yes/No).
- ضع حرف الاستفهام المناسب في أسئلة (Wh).
- غيّر الأزمنة، الضمائر، وكلمات الزمان والمكان.
- ناقش نفسك بعد الحل، وتأكد من الإجابة.

7 Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

تذكر دائماً:
كل سؤال مباشر يتحول في
الكلام المنقول إلى جملة خبرية
تبدأ بفعل نقل مناسب.

الوحدة الثانية 2

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Reported Speech

مراجعة شاملة + أخطاء شائعة + نصائح للامتحان

1 Summary of Rules ملخص القواعد

1	Reported Statements الكلام الخبري	نستخدم (say / tell) ثم نحذف علامات الاقتباس ونغير زمن الفعل والضمائر وكلمات الزمان والمكان عند الحاجة. غالباً نستخدم (that).
2	Backshift (Changes in Tenses) تغيير الأزمنة	نغير زمن الفعل إلى زمن ماضي مناسب حسب الجدول في صفحة 16.
3	Pronouns Changes تغيير الضمائر	نغير الضمائر بحسب الفاعل في الجملة المنقولة. (I → he / she) , (we → they) ...
4	Time/Place Expressions تغيير كلمات الزمان والمكان	نغير كلمات الزمان والمكان مثل (now → then) , (here → there).
5	Say & Tell أفعال النقل	say + that + clause — tell + object + that + clause
6	Commands الأوامر	(tell / order / ask) + object + to + inf.
7	Negative Commands الأوامر السلبية	(tell / warn / order / ask) + object + not to + inf.
8	Requests الطلبات	ask + object + to + inf.
9	Advice / Suggestions / Warnings النصائح / الاقتراحات / التحذيرات	advise / suggest / warn + object + to (or not to) + inf.
10	Invitations الدعوات	invite + object + to + inf.

2 Common Mistakes الأخطاء الشائعة

1. استخدام (tell أو say بدون (that).
   - ✗ He said he is tired.
   - ✓ He said (that) he was tired.
2. عدم تغيير زمن الفعل (Backshift).
   - ✗ She said she goes to school.
   - ✓ She said she went to school.
3. عدم تغيير الضمائر.
   - ✗ He said I am busy.
   - ✓ He said he was busy.
4. عدم تغيير كلمات الزمان والمكان.
   - ✗ He said, "I will come tomorrow."
   - ✓ He said he would come the next day.
5. استخدام (to) أو (not to) بشكل خاطئ بعد الأوامر والتحذيرات.
   - ✗ He told me not go out.
   - ✓ He told me not to go out.
6. خلط say و tell.
   - ✗ He told that he is a doctor.
   - ✓ He told me (that) he was a doctor.
7. استخدام (will) بعد نقل الجملة.
   - ✗ He said he will help me.
   - ✓ He said he would help me.
8. عدم حذف علامات الاستفهام أو الفواصل.
   - ✗ She asked, "Where do you live?"
   - ✓ She asked where I lived.
9. استخدام الفعل الخاطئ في الأوامر والتحذيرات.
   - ✗ He said to me, "Don't be late."
   - → (استخدم فعل التحذير المناسب).
   - ✓ He warned me not to be late.
10. نسيان (that) بعد أفعال النقل في الكلام الخبري.
    - ✗ They said they are happy.
    - ✓ They said (that) they were happy.
11. خلط بين الاستفهام بنعم / لا و (WH-questions).
    - ✗ He asked me what do you want.
    - ✓ He asked me what I wanted.
12. عدم الانتباه للكلمات الخاصة بالزمن والمكان في السياق.
    - ✗ He said, "I saw her yesterday." (لم تغير).
    - ✓ He said he had seen her the day before.

Golden Summary ★ ملخص ذهبي ★

- ☑ احذف علامات الاقتباس.
- ☑ اختر فعل النقل المناسب.
- ☑ ضع (that) في الكلام الخبري.
- ☑ غيّر زمن الفعل (Backshift).
- ☑ غيّر الضمائر.
- ☑ غيّر كلمات الزمان والمكان.
- ☑ استخدم (to) أو (not to) بعد الأوامر والتحذيرات.
- ☑ راجع نوع السؤال ثم انقلها بطريقة صحيحة.
- ☑ أقرأ الجملة جيداً قبل النقل.

★ ★ ★

3 Exam Tips نصائح للامتحان

1. حدد نوع الجملة أولاً (خبري – أمر – سؤال – طلب – نصيحة – تحذير – دعوة).
2. اختر فعل النقل المناسب؟ (say / tell / ask / order / advise / warn / invite ...).
3. حوّل الفعل إلى الزمن المناسب وفق قاعدة (Backshift).
4. غيّر الضمائر وكلمات الزمان والمكان إذا لزم الأمر.
5. استخدم (to / not to) بشكل صحيح بعد الأوامر والتحذيرات.
6. في الأسئلة: انظر هل هي (Yes/No) أم (WH-question) ثم انقلها بطريقة صحيحة.
7. انتبه للكلمات الدالة على الزمن والمكان لأنها تُسأل كثيراً.
8. لا تنس (that) في الكلام الخبري (معظم الامتحانات تعتمد عليها).
9. تمرين يومياً على كل نوع من الجمل المنقولة.
10. أقرأ السؤال جيداً وحدد المطلوب بالضبط قبل الإجابة.

تحويل سريع في 5 خطوات

1. ما نوع الجملة؟
2. ما فعل النقل المناسب؟
3. احذف الاقتباس وضع (that) إذا لزم.
4. غيّر الزمن والضمائر وكلمات الزمان والمكان.
5. راجع الجملة وتأكد من صحتها.

الوحدة الثانية 2

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

★★ Inside the World of Care ★★

Mixed Practice (1)

تدريبات شاملة على ما سبق

1 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. She said, "I am going to the library."
   She said (that) she _____ to the library.
   a) goes b) go c) was going d) went
2. My father told me, "Don't be late."
   My father told me _____ late.
   a) not to be b) to not be c) don't be d) not be
3. Ali asked me, "Where do you live?"
   Ali asked me _____.
   a) where I lived b) where do I live c) where I live d) where I live?
4. She wanted to know if I _____ the book.
   a) read b) reads c) reading d) had read
5. The teacher advised us _____ hard.
   a) study b) to study c) studying d) studied
6. He told me not _____ my phone in class.
   a) use b) to use c) using d) used
7. My mother suggested that we _____ early.
   a) leave b) leaves c) leaving d) leave
8. He warned me _____ the road carefully.
   a) cross b) to cross c) crossing d) crossed
9. They invited me _____ their house.
   a) to b) on c) in d) for
10. She asked if I _____ dinner.
    a) eating b) eat c) will eat d) would eat

2 Do as shown between brackets : أعد كتابة الجملة كما هو مطلوب

1. He said, "I have a new bike." (Tell me)
2. She asked, "Can you help me?" (Ask me)
3. My father told me, "Turn off the TV." (Tell me)
4. They said, "We are watching a movie." (Say)
5. Ali wanted to know, "Where is the bank?" (Ask me)
6. My teacher advised me, "Don't talk in class." (instruction)
7. She asked if I knew the answer. (Backshift)
8. He invited me to his birthday party. (Make negative)
9. My mother warned me, "Don't stay up late." (Instruction)
10. He asked, "Did you finish your homework?" (Yes/No question)

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s): اكمل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة بين القوسين

1. She advised me _____ hard for exams. (study)
2. He asked me _____ he could borrow my pen. (if)
3. My father told me _____ late for school. (not be)
4. They suggested _____ to the seaside. (go)
5. She wanted to know _____ the train arrived on time. (whether)
6. The doctor warned me _____ too much sugar. (not eat)
7. He invited me _____ dinner at his house. (have)
8. Ali asked me _____ I had seen the new film. (if)
9. My teacher advised us _____ our time. (organize)
10. She asked for _____ a glass of water. (give)

4 Match (A) with (B) : صل العمود (A) بما يناسبه في العمود (B)

(A)		(B)
1 asked me where	•	a) he could help her.
2 told me not	•	b) to save electricity.
3 advised us	•	c) to stay away from the fire.
4 wanted to know if	•	d) the meeting would start.
5 invited me	•	e) to eat healthy food.
6 warned the children	•	f) I would go with them.
7 suggested that we	•	g) not to touch the wires.
8 asked for	•	h) to his school party.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct reported form : ضع الأفعال بين القوسين في الصورة المنقولة الصحيحة

1. He said, "I am feeling better."
   He said (that) he _____ better. (feel)
2. She said, "I will call you later."
   She said (that) she _____ me later. (will call)
3. My father said, "I have repaired the car."
   My father said (that) he _____ the car. (have)
4. They said, "We are going to travel."
   They said (that) they _____ to travel. (be)
5. Ali said, "I don't like coffee."
   Ali said (that) he _____ coffee. (not like)
6. She said, "I was reading a book."
   She said (that) she _____ a book. (be)
7. He said, "I had finished my work."
   He said (that) he _____ his work. (have)
8. My mother said, "I will cook dinner."
   My mother said (that) she _____ dinner. (will cook)
9. They said, "We were playing football."
   They said (that) they _____ football. (be)
10. My teacher said, "You should speak English."
    My teacher said (that) I _____ English. (should speak)

6 Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets : أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام الكلمة بين القوسين

1. She asked me if I could open the window. (ask)
2. He told the students to be quiet. (tell)
3. My father advised me to wake up early. (advise)
4. They suggested going to the park. (suggest)
5. Ali warned his brother not to play with knives. (warn)
6. She invited me to her graduation party. (invite)
7. He wanted to know if I had any questions. (want to know)
8. The doctor advised him to drink more water. (advise)
9. My mother told me not to spend too much money. (tell)
10. They asked me where I was going. (ask)

7 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

1. He said me to come. ✗
   He told me to come. ✓
2. She asked where I live? ✗
   - She asked where I lived. ✓
3. They suggested to go. ✗
   - They suggested going. ✓
4. He warned me don't smoke. ✗
   - He warned me not to smoke. ✓
5. My father told me to study hard. ✗
   - My father advised me to study hard. ✓

8 Exam Tips ☆ نصائح للامتحان

- اقرأ الجملة جيداً وحدد نوع الفعل المنقول.
- اضبط الفعل حسب قاعدة زمنة الجديد.
- انتبة جيداً لتغيير الضمائر وكلمات الزمن والمكان.
- لا تنس (that) مع الكلام الخبري.
- في (Yes/No) أو الأسئلة اسْخدَمْ (if / استخدم (Yes/No).
- في الأوامر والنصائح استخدم (to + inf.) .(not to + inf.)
- راجع نوع السؤال ثم اختر المصطلح الصحيح للإجابة.

9 Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

"كلما تدريت أكثر على الأفعال المنقولة، أصيحت الكتابة والاختيار أسهل وأسرع في الامتحان."

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Mixed Practice (2)

تدريبات شاملة على ما سبق

1 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. He asked me _____ I had seen his keys.
   a) where b) that c) when d) if
2. My teacher told us _____ be quiet.
   a) to b) not to c) don't d) not
3. She wanted to know _____ you would come.
   a) if b) that c) when d) whether
4. Ali warned me _____ the dog.
   a) of b) about c) to d) from
5. They advised me _____ more water.
   a) drink b) to drink c) drinking d) drank
6. He invited me _____ his house.
   a) at b) on c) to d) in
7. My father asked, "_____ did you go yesterday?"
   a) where b) what c) who d) when
8. She said, "I have finished my homework." (Backshift)
   a) She said she had finished her homework.
   b) She said she has finished her homework.
   c) She said she finishes her homework.
   d) She said she was finishing her homework.
9. The doctor advised him _____ smoking.
   a) stop b) to stop c) stopping d) stopped
10. He asked me _____ help him.
    a) if I can b) that I can c) if can I d) that can I

2 Do as shown between brackets : أعد كتابة الجملة كما هو مطلوب

1. She said, "I will call you later." (Backshift)
2. My father told me, "Don't be late." (Negative command)
3. They asked, "Where do you live?" (Yes/No question)
4. He advised me to take this medicine. (Make negative)
5. Ali suggested going to the cinema. (Use : suggest + that)
6. She wanted to know if I was free. (Wh- question)
7. My mother warned me not to stay up late. (Backshift)
8. He invited us to his wedding. (Change to : invite + to + place)
9. They said, "We are happy." (Backshift)
10. The teacher told the students to open their books. (Make negative)

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s): أكمل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة بين القوسين

1. My father advised me _____ early. (wake)
2. She asked me _____ the meeting started. (when)
3. He told the boys _____ in the corridor. (not run)
4. They wondered _____ the movie was interesting. (if)
5. My teacher suggested _____ a project. (do)
6. Ali invited his friends _____ his birthday party. (to)
7. She wanted to know _____ you had finished. (whether)
8. The doctor warned him _____ too much salt. (not eat)
9. He asked me _____ I could help. (if)
10. They advised me _____ my time. (organize)

4 Match (A) with (B) : صل العمود (A) بما يناسبه في العمود (B)

(A)		(B)
1 asked me if	•	a) go to the library.
2 told me to	•	b) he lived.
3 warned me not to	•	c) go out alone.
4 advised me to	•	d) study hard.
5 wanted to know	•	e) whether I was tired.
6 invited me to	•	f) come to his house.
7 suggested that we	•	g) I could join.
8 asked where	•	h) we should meet later.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct reported form : ضع الأفعال بين القوسين في الصورة المنقولة الصحيحة

1. He said, "I am hungry." (feel)
   He said he _____ hungry.
2. She said, "I don't like fish." (not like)
   She said she _____ fish.
3. My father told me, "Lock the door." (tell)
   My father told me _____ the door.
4. My mother asked, "Have you done your homework?" (Yes/No)
   My mother asked me _____ done my homework.
5. The teacher advised me, "Study your lessons." (advise)
   The teacher advised me _____ my lessons.
6. Ali said, "I will visit my uncle." (said)
   Ali said he _____ his uncle.
7. They said, "We went to the park yesterday." (said)
   They said they _____ to the park the day before.
8. She asked me, "Can you help me?" (ask)
   She asked me _____ her.
9. He invited me, "Come with me." (invite)
   He invited me _____ him.
10. My father warned me, "Don't drive fast." (warn)
    My father warned me _____ fast.

6 Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets : أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام الكلمة بين القوسين

1. She asked me if I could lend her my book. (ask)
2. He told me not to make noise. (tell)
3. My teacher advised me to practice speaking. (advise)
4. They wanted to know where I had been. (want to know)
5. Ali invited me to play football. (invite)
6. She suggested that we should go by train. (suggest)
7. My mother warned me not to stay out late. (warn)
8. He asked me if I liked coffee. (ask)
9. The doctor advised him to take a rest. (advise)
10. They asked me where I was going. (ask)

7 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

1. He told me go home. (X)
   → He told me to go home. (✓)
2. She asked where do you live. (X)
   → She asked where I lived. (✓)
3. They advised me not eat fast food. (X)
   → They advised me not to eat fast food. (✓)
4. He warned me from the dog. (X)
   → He warned me about the dog. (✓)
5. My father said, "I am tired." → He said he was tired. (✓)

8 Exam Tips ☆ نصائح للامتحان

- اقرأ السؤال جيدًا وحدد نوع الفعل المنقول.
- انتبه لتغيير الضمائر وكلمات الزمن والمكان.
- تذكر قاعدة (Backshift) في تغيير الأزمنة.
- استخدم (to / not to) مع الأوامر والنصائح.
- في الأسئلة (Yes/No) استخدم (Yes/No).
- راجع نوع السؤال ثم أجب بطريقة صحيحة وسريعة.

9 Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

"كل فعل نقله في الكلام المباشر يمكن تحويله إلى جملة منقولة بسهولة إذا اتبعت القواعد خطوة بخطوة."

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Mixed Practice (3)

تدريبات شاملة على ما سبق

1 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Ali asked me _____ home early.
   a) to come b) come c) coming d) comes
2. She suggested that we _____ by bus.
   a) travel b) travels c) traveling d) travelled
3. My mother advised me _____ much TV.
   a) not watch b) not to watch c) don't watch d) not watching
4. He asked me if I _____ free the next day.
   a) am b) was c) will be d) is
5. The teacher told the students _____ noisy.
   a) not be b) don't be c) be not d) don't being
6. She wanted to know _____ you had the book.
   a) if b) whether c) when d) where
7. They warned us _____ near the lake.
   a) not to go b) not going c) don't go d) not go
8. My father told me _____ the door.
   a) to lock b) locking c) locked d) lock
9. He asked me _____ I could help him.
   a) if b) that c) whether d) what
10. She invited me _____ her birthday party.
    a) to b) at c) on d) in

2 Do as shown between brackets : أعد كتابة الجملة كما هو مطلوب

1. He said, "I am tired." (Make negative)
2. My mother asked me, "Where are you going?" (Yes/No question)
3. Ali told me, "Don't forget your homework." (Backshift)
4. They said, "We will help you." (Change to : suggest + that)
5. She advised me, "Drink more water." (Change to : advised + to)
6. My teacher asked me if I had finished my work. (Change into reported speech)
7. He said to me, "Close the window." (Change into reported speech)
8. My father warned me not to play with fire. (Change into reported speech)
9. She asked me whether I liked reading. (Change into reported speech)
10. The doctor said, "Take this medicine twice a day." (Change into reported speech)

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s): أكمل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة بين القوسين

1. My mother advised me _____ healthy food. (eat)
2. She asked me _____ her sister. (help)
3. He told the boys _____ in the sun. (not stay)
4. They wondered _____ the meeting would start. (when)
5. My teacher suggested _____ English every day. (study)
6. Ali wanted _____ his father. (see)
7. She invited us _____ her house. (visit)
8. The doctor warned him _____ late. (not stay up)
9. He asked me _____ I could borrow his book. (if)
10. They advised us _____ our hands. (wash)

4 Match (A) with (B) : صل العمود (A) بما يناسبه في العمود (B)

(A)		(B)	
1 asked me not to	•	a)	not be late.
2 suggested that we	•	b)	go to his party.
3 warned me to	•	c)	he would come.
4 invited me to	•	d)	he had any money.
5 advised me to	•	e)	study hard.
6 told me that	•	f)	help him.
7 wanted to know	•	g)	stop talking.
8 wondered if	•	h)	we take a taxi.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct reported form : ضع الأفعال بين القوسين في الصورة المنقولة الصحيحة

1. He said, "I can solve the problem."
   He said that he _____ the problem. (can)
2. She said, "I'm watching TV."
   She said that she _____ TV. (be watching)
3. My father said, "I have bought a new car."
   My father said that he _____ a new car. (have bought)
4. They said, "We will travel tomorrow."
   They said that they _____ the next day. (will travel)
5. Ali said, "Don't touch the wires." (not to touch)
   Ali told me _____ the wires.
6. She asked me _____ her the next day. (to call)
   My mother sa_____ busy yesterday."
7. My mother said that she _____ busy. (be)
   He said, "I didn't see the accident."
8. He said: "I _____ (not see)
   He said that he _____ the accident.
9. The doctor said, "Drink this medicine." (to drink)
   The doctor advised me _____ that medicine.
10. They said, "We have already finished." (have)
    They said that they _____ already.

6 Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets : أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام الكلمة بين القوسين

1. He asked me if I could open the door. (ask)
2. She told me not to be late. (tell)
3. My father advised me to be honest. (advise)
4. They suggested going to the zoo. (suggest)
5. Ali wanted to know where the bank was. (want to know)
6. My mother warned me not to eat many sweets. (warn)
7. She invited us to her graduation party. (invite)
8. He asked where I lived. (ask)
9. The teacher told the students to do their homework. (tell)
10. She wanted to know if I was free. (want to know)

7 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

1. He advised me go now. (✗)
   → He advised me to go now. (✓)
2. She asked where do you live. (✗)
   → She asked where I lived. (✓)
3. They suggested we to leave. (✗)
   → They suggested that we (should) leave. (✓)
4. My father told me don't be late. (✗)
   → My father told me not to be late. (✓)
5. He warned me play with fire. (✗)
   → He warned me not to play with fire. (✓)

8 Exam Tips ☆ نصائح للامتحان

- اقرأ السؤال جيداً وحدد المطلوب بدقة.
- انتبه لقواعد (Backshift) في الكلام المنقول.
- لا تنس (not to + inf.) مع الأوامر والنصائح والتحذيرات.
- ضع (that) بعد أفعال مثل (think – tell – hint).
- حوّل الأزمنة حسب قاعدة تغيير الأزمنة.
- راجع نوع السؤال ثم أجب بخط واضح وسريع.

9 Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

"الممارسة المستمرة
هي سر التفوق في
أفعال القول.
تدرب اليوم .. وكن واثقا غداً"

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد
موبايل واتس
01095006994

الوحدة الثانية 2

للصف الثانث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

★ ★ Inside the World of Care ★ ★

Mixed Practice (4)

تدريبات شاملة على ما سبق

1 Choose the correct answer : اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. He asked me _____ I had taken his pen.
   a) if b) that c) whether d) who
2. She said (that) she _____ her homework.
   a) finishes b) finished c) had finished d) will finish
3. My father advised me _____ late.
   a) not to stay up b) stay up c) to stay up d) staying up
4. They invited me _____ their new house.
   a) on b) in c) to d) at
5. She asked me if I _____ hungry.
   a) am b) was c) were d) is
6. He told me _____ make noise.
   a) not to b) don't c) to not d) no
7. My teacher suggested that we _____ hard.
   a) to work b) work c) working d) worked
8. Ali warned his brother _____ the river.
   a) not to swim in b) not swim in c) don't swim in d) to not swim in
9. She wanted to know _____ he was coming.
   a) if b) that c) whether d) who
10. He said he _____ visit us the next week.
    a) will b) would c) was d) is

2 Do as shown between brackets : أعد كتابة الجملة كما هو مطلوب

1. He said, "I have lost my wallet." (Make negative)
2. My mother asked me, "Did you finish your homework?" (Yes/No question)
3. They said, "We are going to the museum." (Backshift)
4. Ali advised me to see a doctor. (Change into reported speech)
5. She asked me, "Where do you live?" (Wh- question)
6. My father told me, "Don't be late." (Change into reported speech)
7. He warned me not to touch the dog. (Change into reported speech)
8. They invited us to the opening ceremony. (Change into reported speech)
9. The teacher said, "Study your lessons." (Change into reported speech)
10. She said that she had seen the film. (Backshift)

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s): أكمل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة بين القوسين

1. My father advised me _____ every morning. (exercise)
2. She asked me _____ the book. (return)
3. He told the children _____ in the street. (not play)
4. They wondered _____ the train was late. (why)
5. Ali invited me _____ his birthday dinner. (join)
6. My teacher suggested _____ quiet in class. (be)
7. The doctor warned him _____ fast food. (not eat)
8. She wanted to know _____ he had money. (whether)
9. He asked me _____ close the window. (please)
10. They advised us _____ water every day. (drink)

4 Match (A) with (B) : صل العمود (A) بما يناسبه في العمود (B)

(A)		(B)
1 asked me whether	•	a) be more careful.
2 advised me to	•	b) the party.
3 warned me not to	•	c) he was tired.
4 invited me to	•	d) she didn't come.
5 wanted to know	•	e) study hard.
6 told me that	•	f) he was late.
7 wondered why	•	g) take the medicine.
8 suggested that we	•	h) he would come.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct reported form : ضع الأفعال بين القوسين في الصورة المنقولة الصحيحة

1. He said, "I am going to buy a laptop."
   He said that he _____ a laptop. (was going to buy)
2. She asked, "Can you help me?"
   She asked me _____. (help)
3. My father said, "I have repaired the bike."
   My father said that he _____ the bike. (had repaired)
4. They said, "We will arrive soon."
   They said that they _____ soon. (would arrive)
5. Ali said, "I don't like loud music."
   Ali said that he _____ loud music. (didn't like)
6. She said, "I saw the accident."
   She said that she _____ the accident. (had seen)
7. He asked, "Where is the post office?"
   He asked _____ the post office was. (where)
8. My mother said, "Don't forget your keys."
   My mother told me _____ my keys. (not to forget)
9. They said, "We were studying."
   They said that they _____. (had been studying)
10. The teacher said, "Work quietly."
    The teacher told the students _____. (to work)

6 Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets : أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام الكلمة بين القوسين

1. He asked me if I could use his computer. (ask)
2. My father told me not to waste time. (tell)
3. My teacher advised me to read more. (advise)
4. They suggested going to the beach. (suggest)
5. Ali warned us not to cross the road. (warn)
6. She invited me to her engagement party. (invite)
7. He wanted to know where I had been. (want to know)
8. The doctor advised him to take it after meals. (advise)
9. She asked me whether I liked ice cream. (ask)
10. My mother told me to keep my room clean. (tell)

7 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

1. He said me that he was sorry. (✗)
   → He said that he was sorry. (✓)
2. She asked where do you live. (✗)
   → She asked where I lived. (✓)
3. He advised me don't be late. (✗)
   → He advised me not to be late. (✓)
4. They told us go home now. (✗)
   → They told us to go home then. (✓)
5. She wondered when he will come. (✗)
   → She wondered when he would come. (✓)

8 Exam Tips ☆ نصائح للامتحان

- اقرأ السؤال جيداً وحدد نوع الفعل المطلوب.
- تذكر قواعد (Backshift) عند النقل إلى الماضي.
- ضع (that) بعد (say / tell / claim) عادة.
- استخدم (advise to) بعد (advise /to + inf.).
- استخدم (not + to + inf.) بعد (warn / + inf.).
- راجع نوع السؤال ثم أجب بدقة وسرعة.

9 Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

"كلما تدربت على تحويل الجمل بين المباشر والغر مباشر كلما أصبحت أسرع وأدق في فهم اللغة واستخدامها."

الوحدة الثالثة 3

الصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

★ The Future of Learning

مستقبل التعلم

Introduction مقدمة الوحدة

في هذه الوحدة سنتعلم كيف نستنتج ، نتوقع ، نأسف أو نلوم في الحاضر والماضي باستخدام الأفعال المساعدة (Modal Verbs).

In this unit, we will learn how to make deductions, express possibilities, and talk about regret or criticism using Modal Verbs.

Objectives أهداف التعلم

- ✓ Use modal verbs of deduction in the present.
- ✓ Use modal verbs of deduction about the past.
- ✓ Express possibility and probability.
- ✓ Express regret and criticism about the past.
- ✓ Compare between different modal verbs.
- ✓ Avoid common mistakes.
- ✓ Use the correct modal verb in different contexts.

- استخدام الأفعال المساعدة في الاستنتاج بالحاضر.
- استخدام الأفعال المساعدة في الاستنتاج عن الماضي.
- التعبير عن الاحتمال والافتراض.
- التعبير عن الندم واللوم في الماضي.
- المقارنة بين الأفعال المساعدة المختلفة.
- تجنب الأخطاء الشائعة.
- اختيار الفعل المساعد المناسب في مواقف مختلفة.

Unit Grammar Map خريطة قواعد الوحدة

1 Deduction (Present)
الاستنتاج في الحاضر
must / can't
may / might / could

2 Deduction (Past)
الاستنتاج في الماضي
must have / can't have
may have / might have
could have

3 Possibility & Speculation
الاحتمال والافتراض
may / might / could + infinitive

4 Regret & Criticism
الندم واللوم في الماضي
should have
shouldn't have
ought to have

5 Comparison
المقارنة
must vs have to
may vs might vs could
must have vs had to
should have vs shouldn't have

6 Key Words
الكلمات الدالة
probably – perhaps – maybe
certainly – definitely –
obviously – apparently

7 Common Mistakes
الأخطاء الشائعة

8 Exam Tips
نصائح الامتحان

9 Practice
التدريبات
- Exercises
- Mini Test
- Challenge

10 Review
مراجعة نهائية
- Summary
- Golden Notes
- Error Check

Why is this important? لماذا هذه القواعد مهمة؟

These rules help you:
- Understand ideas more accurately.
- Express your opinions and feelings better.
- Score high in exams (Grammar & Writing).
- Think and communicate like a smart learner.

هذه القواعد تساعدك على:
- فهم المعاني والأفكار بدقة أكبر.
- التعبير عن آرائك ومشاعرك بشكل أفضل.
- الحصول على درجات عالية في الامتحانات.
- التفكير والتواصل مثل متعلم ذكي.

★ The Future of Learning ★

مستقبل التعلم

Lesson 1

Modal Verbs of Deduction (Present)

أفعال الاستنتاج في الحاضر

تستخدم أفعال المودال في الاستنتاج عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن شيء نعتقد أنه صحيح أو محتمل في الوقت الحاضر بناءً على دليل أو ملاحظة.

We use modal verbs to make deductions about the present based on what we see, hear or know.

1 must + infinitive (يعبر عن الاستنتاج القوي / التأكيد)

تستخدم (المصدر بدون to) عندما نكون متأكدين تقريباً من أن شيئاً ما صحيح في الوقت الحاضر.

الاستخدام	الصيغة	أمثلة
• للتعبير عن يقين قوي جداً. • عندما تكون الأدلة واضحة.	Subject + must + infinitive (bare form) (المصدر بدون to)	• He studies hard. He must be intelligent. (يدرس بجد. لا بد أنه ذكي.) • You are always late. You must be busy. (أنت دائماً متأخر. لا بد أنك مشغول.) • She knows a lot about computers. She must work in an IT company. (هي تعرف الكثير عن الكمبيوتر. لا بد أنها تعمل في شركة تقنية.)

ملاحظات

- (must) يدل على يقين قوي. وليس مجرد احتمال.
- غالباً ما يكون الدليل من الملاحظة (I see / You are ...)
- تستخدم (mustn't) عندما تكون متأكدين أن شيئاً ما غير صحيح.

مقارنة سريعة

must = I am almost sure
may / might = It is possible

2 can't / cannot + infinitive (يعبر عن الاستحالة / النفي القاطع)

تستخدم (can't / cannot) (المصدر) عندما نكون متأكدين أن شيئاً ما لا يمكن أن يكون صحيحاً.

الاستخدام	الصيغة	أمثلة
• للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث شيء. • عندما يتعارض مع الحقائق.	Subject + can't / cannot + infinitive (المصدر بدون to)	• He can't be at home. I saw him at school. (لا يمكن أن يكون في المنزل. رأيته في المدرسة.) • This can't be true. There is no evidence. (هذا لا يمكن أن يكون صحيحاً. لا يوجد دليل.) • She can't understand the lesson. She wasn't listening. (لا يمكن أن تفهم الدرس. لم تكن تستمع.)

ملاحظات

- (can't) تدل على استحالة قوية جداً.
- تستخدمها عندما يكون هناك دليل واضح ينفي حدوث الشيء.
- (cannot) هي نفس المعنى. لكنها أكثر رسمية.

لا تخلط بين

can't = لا يمكن أن يكون
mustn't = (تحذير) / لا، يجب ألا (هي)

3 may / might / could + infinitive (يعبر عن الاحتمال / عدم اليقين)

تستخدم (may / might / could) (المصدر) عندما نعتقد أن شيئاً ما ممكن أن يحدث. ولكننا غير متأكدين تماماً.

could (احتمال ضعيف)	might (احتمال أقل)	may (احتمال حاضر)
• يُستخدم لاحتمال ضعيف جداً أو للتكهن.	• يستخدم لاحتمال أقل من (may).	• يستخدم لاحتمال معقول في الحاضر.
Examples: • He could be the winner. (قد يكون هو الفائز.) • It may rain later. (قد تمطر لاحقاً.)	Examples: • He might be sleeping. (قد يكون نائماً.) • They might come tomorrow. (قد يأتون غداً.)	Examples: • She may be at the library. (قد تكون في المكتبة.) • This could be a good idea. (قد تكون هذه فكرة جيدة.)

ملاحظات

- كلما كان الاحتمال أقوى تستخدم (may). وأقل نستخدم (might). وأضعف يستخدم (could).
- تستخدم هذه الأفعال عندما لا تملك دليلاً قوياً.

درجة الاحتمال

may = احتمال ★★★
might = احتمال أقل ★★
could = احتمال ضعيف ★

• probably (ربما) • perhaps (ربما) • maybe (ربما) • possibly (من الممكن) • certainly (بالتأكيد) • definitely (بالتأكيد)
• obviously (من الواضح) • surely (بالتأكيد) • of course (بالطبع) • I think (أعتقد) • I believe (أعتقد)

تدريب 1

أختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. He is an excellent pianist. He must _____ music every day.
   a) practice b) practiced c) practices d) practicing
2. That can't be Sarah. She is in Paris now.
   a) must b) might c) can't d) may
3. They may _____ late because of the traffic.
   a) are b) be c) being d) been
4. He is very tired. He might _____ all night.
   a) work b) worked c) be working d) works
5. This could _____ a good solution to the problem.
   a) be b) is c) are d) been

تدريب 2

أعد صياغة الجمل باستخدام الفعل المساعد المناسب :

1. I am almost sure he is at home. (must)
   → He _____ at home.
2. I am sure this is not the answer. (can't)
   → This _____ the answer.
3. It is possible that she is busy now. (may)
   → She _____ busy now.
4. Maybe they are coming tonight. (might)
   → They _____ tonight.
5. It is possible, but I am not sure. (could)
   → It _____, but I am not sure.

★ The Future of Learning ★

مستقبل التعلم

Lesson 2 ## Modal Verbs of Deduction (About the Past)

أفعال الاستنتاج عن الماضي

تستخدم بعض أفعال المودال مع (have + التصريف الثالث) كي نستنتج شيئاً عن حدث في الماضي بناءً على أدلة.

We use modal verbs with have + past participle to make deductions about the past based on evidence or information we have now.

1 must have + past participle (يعبر عن الاستنتاج المؤكد في الماضي)

تستخدمه عندما نكون متأكدين تقريبياً أن شيئًا حدث في الماضي.

الاستخدام	الصيغة	أمثلة
• للتعبير عن يقين قوي بأن حدثاً ما وقع. • تستخدمه عندما تكون الأدلة واضحة جداً.	Subject + must have + past participle (P.P) (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• She is not here. She **must have left** early. (نحن متأكدون تقريباً أنها غادرت مبكراً). • The floor is wet. It **must have rained** last night. (من المؤكد تقريبًا أنه أمطر الليلة الماضية.). • He has a new car. He **must have bought** it. (هو بالتأكيد تقريباً قد اشترها)

ملاحظات

- تعني (must have) = من المؤكد ..... .
- دائماً تأتي مع (have) + التصريف الثالث).
- لا تُستخدم مع الفاعل ا.

مقارنة سريعة

must	= أنا متأكد الآن
must have	= متأكد الآن أن هذا حدث في الماضي

2 can't have + past participle (يعبر عن الاستنتاج السلبي في الماضي)

تستخدمه عندما نستنتج أن شيئاً ما لم يحدث في الماضي.

الاستخدام	الصيغة	أمثلة
• للتعبير عن استحالة حدوث شيء. • للنفي مؤكد جداً.	Subject + can't have + past participle (P.P) (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• He **can't have gone** out. I saw him two minutes ago. (لا يمكن أنه خرج . رأيته منذ دقيقتين). • She **can't have finished** the test. It's too short. (لا يمكن أنها انتهت من الاختبار. الوقت قصير جداً). • They **can't have traveled** by plane. There are no tickets. (لا يمكن أنهم سافروا بالطائرة. لا توجد تذاكر).

ملاحظات

- تعني (can't have) = من المستحيل ..... .
- تأتي دائما مع (have) + التصريف الثالث).
- لا تُستخدم مع الفاعل ا.

لا تخلط بين

can't	= لا يمكن (في الحاضر)
can't have	= لا يمكن أنه حدث في الماضي)

3 may have / might have / could have + past participle (يعبر عن احتمال في الماضي)

تستخدمها عندما نعتقد أن شيئاً ما ربما حدث في الماضي ، لكننا غير متأكدين.

(احتمال ضعيف may have)	might have (احتمال متوسط)	(احتمال أعلى) (احتمال أعلى من might)
• She **may have seen** the movie. (قد تكون رأت الفيلم). • They **may have forgotten** our number. (قد يكونوا نسوا رقمنا).	• He **might have missed** the bus. (قد يكون فاته الأتوبيس). • She **might have gone** to the library. (قد تكون ذهبت إلى المكتبة).	• He **could have done** the work. (قد يكون فعل العمل). • It **could have been** John. (قد يكون كان جون).

ملاحظات

- الفرق بين may / might يكون في درجة الاحتمال.
- جميعها تأتي مع (have +) التصريف الثالث).
- لا تُستخدمها مع الفاعل ا.

درجات الاحتمال

may have	= احتمال ضعيف	★
might have	= احتمال متوسط	★★
could have	= احتمال أعلى	★★★

عبارات شائعة تستخدم مع الاستنتاج عن الماضي

- probably (على الأرجح)
- perhaps (ربما)
- maybe (ربما)
- I think (أعتقد)
- I believe (أعتقد)
- I'm sure (أنا متأكد)
- It's possible that (من الممكن أن)
- It's likely that (من المحتمل أن)
- It seems that (يبدو أن)
- Of course (بالطبع)

تدريب 1

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. He is not in the office. He _____ have gone home.
   a) must b) must have c) can't d) can't have
2. This shirt is wet. It _____ rained.
   a) must b) must have c) may d) might
3. She finished the exam in ten minutes. She _____ copied.
   a) must have b) can't have c) may have d) might have
4. I saw him five minutes ago. He _____ left.
   a) must b) must have c) can't d) can't have
5. Maybe they _____ the news.
   a) saw b) have seen c) might see d) might have seen

تدريب 2

أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام الفعل المناسب بين القوسين :

1. The door is open. Someone _____ (must have / can't have) come in.
2. I'm not sure about the answer. He _____ (may have / must have) forgotten.
3. She is too young to drive a car. She _____ (can't have / must have) a license.
4. The train is late. It _____ (might have / must have) had problems.
5. They don't know the result yet. They _____ (may have / can't have) passed.

Exam Tip

- إذا كنت متأكداً تقريبًا من حدوث شيء في الماضي اساضي استخدم (must have).
- إذا كنت متأكداً أنه لم يحدث استخدم (can't have).
- إذا كنت غير متأكد استخدم ممن (may / might / could have).

Common Mistake

- من الأخطاء الشائعة :
- نسيان استخدام (have) + التصريف الثالث).
- الخلط بين (can't) و (mustn't).
- استخدام (should) بدلاً من (should have).

Golden Note

كلما كانت الأدلة واضحة،
كلما كان الاستنتاج أقوى.

★ The Future of Learning ★

مستقبل التعلم

Lesson 3 Modal Verbs of Speculation & Possibility
أفعال الاحتمال والاقتراض

تستخدم أفعال المودال للتعبير عن الاحتمال أو الاقتراض. تختلف قوة الاحتمال من فعل لآخر.
We use modal verbs to express possibility, speculation or assumption. They show different degrees of uncertainty.

درجة الاحتمال
من الأعلى إلى الأقل

High (عال جدًا)
High (عال)
Possible (محتمل)
Low (منخفض)
Very Unlikely (غير محتمل)

Modal Verb فعل المودال	Uses الاستخدام	Examples أمثلة
must يجب أن من المؤكد تقريبًا	للاقتراب من اليقين. (احتمال شبه مؤكد)	• He must be at home now. (لا بد أنه في المنزل الآن.) • You must be tired after the match. (لا بد أنك متعب بعد المباراة.)
may ربما	للإحتمال والاقتراض. (احتمال أفضل من (might)	• She may be busy. (قد تكون مشغولة.) • It may rain tomorrow. (قد تمطر غدًا.)
might ربما (احتمال أقل)	للإحتمال الأقل أو الافتراض (أقل من (may)	• They might come late. (قد يأتون متأخرين.) • He might be sleeping. (قد يكون نائمًا.)
could قد / ربما (احتمال ضعيف)	لاحتمال ضعيف أو لطلب مهذب (أقل من (might)	• He could be in the library. (قد يكون في المكتبة.) • Could I use your pen, please? (هل يمكنني استخدام قلمك من فضلك؟)
can't / couldn't لا يمكن أن / لا يمكن أن يكون	للتعبير عن استحالة أو عدم احتمالية. (استبعاد الفكرة)	• This can't be true! (لا يمكن أن يكون هذا صحيحًا!) • He couldn't be at the party. (لا يمكن أن يكون في الحفلة.)

ملاحظات مهمة

لا يتغير فعل المودال مع الفاعل.
He may be late. / They may be late.

• تستخدم المصدر (bare infinitive) بعد أفعال المودال في الحاضر.
She might go tomorrow.

• لا تستخدم (to) بعد أفعال المودال.
صح She may go. خطأ She may to go.

• يمكن استخدام أفعال المودال مع جميع الأزمنة.
She may have finished. / He could be watching TV.

مقارنة سريعة

must	= almost certain	من المؤكد تقريبًا
may	= possible (stronger than might)	محتمل (أقوى من (might)
might	= possible (weaker than may)	محتمل (أضعف من (may)
could	= possible (weak possibility)	محتمل (احتمال ضعيف)
can't / couldn't	= impossible / very unlikely	مستحيل / غير محتمل جدًا

عبارات شائعة مع أفعال الاحتمال

- It's possible that ... من الممكن أن .....
- I think ... أعتقد أن ...
- I believe ... أعتقد أن ... .
- I'm not sure, but ... لست متأكدًا، لكن ...
- As far as I know ... على حد علمي .....
- I suppose ... أظن أن ...

1 اختر الإجابة

1. He _____ at work now. I saw his car.
   a) must be b) may be c) might be d) could be
2. It _____ be Tom. He is too young to drive.
   a) must b) may c) can't d) might
3. She _____ have finished her homework. Her book is on the table.
   a) must b) may c) might d) could
4. It's very cold. It _____ snow later.
   a) must b) may c) might d) can't
5. He is not answering his phone. He _____ be in a meeting.
   a) can't b) mustn't c) might d) should
6. This can't be your bag. It's too small.
   a) must b) might c) can't d) may
7. They _____ come to the party, but I'm not sure.
   a) must b) may c) might d) could
8. He looks so happy. He _____ get good news.
   a) must b) may c) might d) can't

2 (must / may / might / could / can't / أكمل)

1. look at the sky! It _____ rain soon.
2. You've studied a lot. You _____ pass the exam.
3. I'm not sure where Ahmed is. He _____ be at the gym.
4. This _____ be the answer. Let's check again.
5. This phone _____ be mine. I lost mine yesterday.
6. They _____ come tomorrow. They are busy.
7. It's very dark in here. The light _____ be broken.
8. I _____ be wrong, but I think I saw him yesterday.

Exam Tip

- إذا كان الدليل قويًا جدًا على حدوث شيء استخدم (must).
- إذا كان منطقيًا وعالي الاحتمال استخدم (may).
- إذا كان الاحتمال ضعيفًا أو غير مؤكد استخدم (might / could).
- إذا كنت متأكدًا من استحالة شيء استخدم (can't).

Common Mistakes

- خطأ : He must to be tired.
  صح ✓ = He must be tired.
- خطأ : She may to go.
  صح ✓ = She may go.
- خطأ : He can't of done it.
  صح ✓ = He can't have done it.

Golden Note

كلما كانت الأدلة أقوى
كان استخدامك لـ must.
كلما كان الاحتمال ضعيفًا
كان استخدامك لـ might أو could.
لا تنسَ can't عند استحالة الشيء.

★ The Future of Learning ★
مستقبل التعلم

Lesson 4

Regret & Criticism in the Past
الندم واللوم في الماضي

تستخدم بعض الأفعال المساعدة مع (التصريف + الثالث) للتعبير عن الندم على شيء فعلناه أو لم نفعله في الماضي
أو لانتقاد شخص لأن شيئًا لم يحدث.
We use certain modal verbs with have + past participle to talk about regret, criticism or blame in the past.

المعنى والاستخدام	Modal Verb الفعل المساعد	Structure التركيب	Examples أمثلة
• ندم على عدم فعل شيء • كان ينبغي أن أفعل. • تستخدم مع النصيحة في الماضي.	**should have** كان ينبغي أن	Subject + should have + past participle (P.P) (المصدر + have + التصريف الثالث)	• I should have studied harder. (كان ينبغي أن أدرس بجد أكثر.) • You should have listened to your teacher. (كان عليك أن تستمع إلى معلمك.) • We should have left earlier. (كان ينبغي لنا أن نغادر أبكر.)
• ندم على فعل شيء. • ما كان ينبغي أن أفعل. • تستخدم للوم أو انتقاد النفس.	**shouldn't have** ما كان ينبغي أن	Subject + shouldn't have + past participle (P.P)	• I shouldn't have eaten so much. (ما كان ينبغي أن أكل كثيرًا.) • You shouldn't have been late. (ما كان ينبغي أن تتأخر.) • He shouldn't have said that. (ما كان ينبغي له أن يقول ذلك.)
• كان من المفترض أن.... أقوى من should have في النصيحة.	**ought to have** كان من المفترض أن	Subject + ought to have + past participle (P.P)	• You ought to have apologized. (كان من المفترض أن تعتذر.) • We ought to have prepared well. (كان من المفترض أن نستعد جيدًا.)
• ندم خفيف أو لوم بسيط. • كان يمكن أن.... يمكن استخدام (couldn't have) للتلوم على عدم فعل شيء مهم.	**could have** كان يمكن أن	Subject + could have + past participle (P.P)	• I could have won the game. (كان يمكنني أن أفوز باللعبة.) • She could have helped me. (كان يمكنها أن تساعدني.) • He couldn't have passed the exam. (لم يكن يمكنه أن يجتاز الامتحان.)

ملاحظات مهمة
- (should/ shouldn't have) للتعبير عن الندم القوي.
- (ought to have) أكثر رسمية وسمية وأقوى في النصيحة.
- للندم له الخفيف أو لوم بسيط. (بسيط).
- إذا كان المقصود أن شيئًا لم يحدث وكان يجب أن يحدث تستخدم (should/ ought to / could have).
  مثال: (لتصال مهم) You should have called me. ، يحدث)

مقارنة سريعة

should have	=	كان ينبغي أن	(ندم أو نصيحة)
shouldn't have	=	ما كان ينبغي أن	(ندم على فعل شيء)
ought to have	=	كان من المفترض أن	(نصيحة أو لوم رسمي)
could have	=	كان يمكن أن	(ندم خفيف أو لوم بسيط)

كلمات وأساليب تدل على الندم واللوم في الماضي
- I regret
- I wish
- If only
- It's a shame that
- I'm sorry
- I blame
- Why didn't I... ?
- I shouldn't have...
- I could have...

أمثلة باستعمة مع (If only /و
- If only I had studied harder. (ليتني درست بجد أكثر.)
- I wish I hadn't eaten so much. (أتمنى لو أنني لم أكل كثيرًا.)
- If only he had listened to me. (ليت لو كان استمع إليّ.)

1 اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I _____ arrived early, but I missed the bus.
   a) should have b) shouldn't have c) ought to have d) could have
2. You _____ been more careful.
   a) should have b) ought to have c) should d) have to
3. She _____ eaten junk food. Now she's sick.
   a) shouldn't have b) should have c) could have d) might have
4. They _____ prepared well for the test.
   a) should have b) ought to have c) could have d) must have
5. I _____ helped my brother.
   a) could have b) shouldn't have c) ought to have d) must have
6. He _____ said such words.
   a) should have b) shouldn't have c) could have d) ought to have
7. We _____ left earlier.
   a) should have b) shouldn't have c) ought to have d) could have
8. I wish I _____ that movie. It was great.
   a) see b) saw c) had seen d) would see

2 أكمل باستخدام الفعل المناسب بين القوسين:
(should have / shouldn't have / ought to have / could have)

1. You _____ apologized to your friend.
2. We _____ waited for the bus. We walked.
3. He _____ eaten breakfast. Now he has a headache.
4. They _____ asked the teacher for help.
5. I _____ been more patient with my little brother.
6. She _____ studied medicine. She loves it.
7. You _____ been honest with me.
8. It's a pity! We _____ won the match.

3 صحح الخطأ:

1. I should went to the doctor yesterday. ⇒ _____
2. You shouldn't have to be late. ⇒ _____
3. He could have borrowed money. ⇒ _____
4. We ought to have finish our homework. ⇒ _____

Exam Tip
- ركز على الكلمة الدالة في الجملة.
- إذا كان هناك ندم قوي، استخدم (should / shouldn't have).
- إذا كان الندم أخف لستخدم (could have).
- (ought to have) تستخدم للنصيحة أو اللوم الرسمي.

Common Mistakes
- استخدام الفعل الأساسي بدل (have + P.P).
  ✗ You should study hard. ✓ You should have studied hard.
- نسيان (have) بعد الفعل المساعد في الماضي.
  ✗ I should studied. ✓ I should have studied.

Golden Note
كلما عبرت عن الندم أو اللوم في الماضي
تذكر أن الفعل المساعد + have +
التصريف الثالث هو المفتاح الصحيح.

★ The Future of Learning ★

مستقبل التعلم

Lesson 5

Comparing All Modal Verbs

المقارنة بين جميع الأفعال المساعدة في الوحدة

Comparison Table جدول المقارنة الشاملة

Modal Verb الفعل المساعد	Function الوظيفة	Strength / Degree قوة المعني	Structure التركيب	Examples أمثلة
must يجب / لا بد	deduction (present) استنتاج قوي في الحاضر	very strong قوي جداً	Subject + must + infinitive (المصدر بدون to)	• He must be at home. (لا بد أنه في المنزل.) • You must be tired. (لا بد أنك متعب.)
can't لا يمكن	impossibility (present) استحالة في الحاضر	very strong (impossible) قوي جداً (مستحيل)	Subject + can't + infinitive (المصدر بدون to)	• He can't be at school. (لا يمكن أن يكون في المدرسة.) • This can't be true. (هذا لا يمكن أن يكون صحيحاً.)
may ربما	possibility احتمال	possible احتمال ممكن	Subject + may + infinitive (المصدر بدون to)	• She may be busy. (قد تكون مشغولة.) • It may rain tomorrow. (قد تمطر غداً.)
might ربما (أقل احتمال)	possibility (less than may) احتمال (أقل من may)	possible (weaker) احتمال ضعيف	Subject + might + infinitive (المصدر بدون to)	• They might arrive late. (قد يصلون متأخرين.) • He might be sleeping. (قد يكون نائماً.)
could قد (أقل احتمال ضعيف)	possibility (weak) احتمال ضعيف	possible (weak) احتمال ضعيف	Subject + could + infinitive (المصدر بدون to)	• He could be in the library. (قد يكون في المكتبة.) • Could I use your pen, please? (هل يمكنني استخدام قلمك من فضلك؟)
must have لا بد أن يكون قد	deduction (past - sure) استنتاج قوي في الماضي	very strong قوي جداً	Subject + must have + P.P (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• She must have left early. (لا بد أنها غادرت مبكراً.) • He must have bought it. (هو بالتأكيد اشتراه.)
can't have لا يمكن أن يكون قد	impossibility (past) استحالة في الماضي	very strong (impossible) قوي جداً (مستحيل)	Subject + can't have + P.P (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• He can't have gone out. (لا يمكن أنه خرج.) • She can't have finished. (لا يمكن أنها انتهت.)
may / might / could have ربما / ربما (أقل / قد يكون قد	possibility (past) احتمال في الماضي	possible (different degrees) احتمال (درجات مختلفة)	Subject + may / might / could have + P.P (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• They may have seen him. (قد يكونوا قد رأوه.) • She might have forgotten. (قد تكون قد نسيت.)
should have كان ينبغي أن	regret / criticism ندم / لوم	advice in the past نصيحة في الماضي	Subject + should have + P.P (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• You should have studied harder. (كان ينبغي أن تدرس بجد أكثر.) • We should have left earlier. (كان ينبغي لنا أن نغادر أبكر.)
shouldn't have ما كان ينبغي أن	regret / criticism ندم / لوم	warning in the past تحذير في الماضي	Subject + shouldn't have + P.P (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• You shouldn't have eaten so much. (ما كان ينبغي أن تأكل كثيراً.) • He shouldn't have said that. (ما كان ينبغي له أن يقول ذلك.)
ought to have كان من المفترض أن	regret / criticism (formal) ندم / لوم (رسمي)	moral / expected واجب أخلاقي / توقع	Subject + ought to have + P.P (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• You ought to have apologized. (كان من المفترض أن تعتذر.) • We ought to have prepared well. (كان من المفترض أن نستعد جيداً.)
could have كان يمكن أن	possibility (past - general) احتمال في الماضي (عام)	weak possibility احتمال ضعيف	Subject + could have + P.P (المصدر + التصريف الثالث)	• I could have won the prize. (كان يمكنني أن أفوز بالجائزة.) • She could have helped me. (كان يمكنها أن تساعدني.)

أهم الفروق Key Differences

must	= أقوي استنتاج في الحاضر.
can't	= استحالة مؤكدة في الحاضر.
may	= احتمال ممكن (أقوى من might).
might	= احتمال ضعيف (أقل من may).
could	= أضعف
must have	= استنتاج قوي في الماضي.
can't have	= استحالة في الماضي.
may/might/could have	= احتمالات في الماضي.
should have	= ندم (كان ينبغي أن).
shouldn't have	= لوم (ما كان ينبغي أن).
ought to have	= واجب أخلاقي (كان من المفترض أن).

الكلمات الدالة المستخدمة Signal Words

probably	= من المحتمل
perhaps	= ربما
maybe	= ربما
possibly	= ربما من الممكن
maybe not	= ربما لا
of course	= بالتأكيد
definitely	= بالتأكيد
certainly	= بالتأكيد
obviously	= من الواضح
I think	= أعتقد
I believe	= أؤمن / أعتقد
it seems that	= يبدو أن
apparently	= من الواضح أن

نصائح امتحانية Exam Tips

- ✓ حدد زمن الجملة أولاً: الحاضر أم الماضي.
- ✓ إذا كان الاستنتاج قوياً استخدم (must / can't).
- ✓ إذا كان الاستنتاج عن الماضي استخدم (have + P.P).
- ✓ الفرق بين may/might/could يعتمد على درجة الاحتمال.
- ✓ في التعبير عن الندم أو اللوم استخدم (should have / shouldn't have).
- ✓ انتبه جيداً إلى كلمات الدالة فهي تساعدك في اختيار الإجابة.

تذكر دائما

الأفعال المساعدة لا تأتي بمفردها:
تأتي دائماً قبل (المصدر) أو (have + P.P)
وتغير معنى الجملة بالكامل.

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. He _____ be a teacher. He wears a suit every day.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) should
2. She _____ have gone to the market. The bag is on the table.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) should
3. It's too late. You _____ miss the bus.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
4. They _____ arrive tomorrow. I'm not sure.
   a) must b) may c) might d) must have
5. You _____ have worked hard. You passed the exam.
   a) must b) can't c) should d) could
6. He _____ have finished his homework. The books are closed.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
7. I'm sorry. I _____ have been rude.
   a) must b) shouldn't c) should d) might
8. This _____ be true. I saw it with my own eyes.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) should

2 Rewrite using the word in brackets:

1. You didn't listen to my advice. (should)
   → You _____ my advice.
2. He is not here. He is at the stadium. (can't)
   → He _____ here.
3. I'm not sure. It is possible. (may)
   → It _____ possible.
4. She looked very tired. (must)
   → She _____ tired.
5. They might not come tonight. (could)
   → They _____ not come tonight.
6. You didn't lock the door. That was a mistake. (shouldn't)
   → You _____ the door.

3 Complete the mini dialogue:

Ali : Where is Sara? I can't see her.
Omar: She _____(1)_____ gone home.
Ali : Why do you think so?
Omar: Because her bag is not here. She _____(2)_____ be at home.
Ali : But it's early.
Omar: She _____(3)_____ be sick.
Ali : I hope not.
Omar: Yes, she _____(4)_____ taken some medicine.
Ali : She _____(5)_____ be feeling better now.

Common Mistakes

- استخدام (must) عند التعبير عن الندم لاستخدم (should have).
- نسيان (have + P.P) عند الكلام عن الماضي.
- الخلط بين (can't) و (mustn't). (الأول = لا يمكن / الثاني = لا يجب)

Golden Note

- كلما كان الاستنتاج أو الاحتمال أقوى استخدم (must / can't).
- كلما كان أضعف استخدم (may / might / could).
وفي الماضي نستخدم (have + P.P) مع نفس الأفعال.

★ The Future of Learning ★

مستقبل التعلم

Lesson 6

Exercises on Deduction & Possibility

تدريبات على الاستنتاج والاحتمال

تدريبات متدرجة تساعدك على استخدام أفعال المودال للتعبير عن الاستنتاج والاحتمال بشكل صحيح.
Gradual exercises to help you use modal verbs of deduction and possibility correctly.

A Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He is not at home. He _____ be at work.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
2. The lights are on. Someone _____ be in the room.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
3. This test is very easy. I _____ finish it in ten minutes.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
4. She looks very tired. She _____ have worked all night.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
5. He couldn't join us. He _____ have had an exam.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
6. He _____ be honest. He returned the wallet.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
7. The weather is very nice today. It _____ rain.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
8. She hasn't replied yet. She _____ be busy.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
9. The floor is wet. It _____ have rained last night.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
10. I'm not sure about the time. She _____ arrive late.
    a) must b) can't c) may d) might

B Complete the sentences with the correct modal verb:

أكمل الجمل بالمودال المناسب:

1. He is an expert. He _____ (must) know the answer.
2. I lost my keys, but now I can't find them. I _____ (must) have left them at home.
3. They are very quiet. They _____ (might) be studying.
4. The museum is closed. It _____ (can't) be open today.
5. It's very late and Ali isn't here yet. He _____ (might) be on the way.
6. You look so happy. You _____ (must) have passed the exam.
7. He hasn't contacted us for days. Something _____ (must) be wrong.
8. We _____ (may) go to the beach if the weather is good.
9. This can't be Sarah's book. Hers is different. It _____ (can't) be hers.
10. They _____ (might) have missed the bus. That's why they are late.

C Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets:

أعد كتابة الجملة باستخدام الكلمات بين القوسين:

1. It's possible that he is at the gym. (may)
   He _____
2. She is very sure that he is honest. (must)
   She _____
3. I think they forgot about the meeting. (might)
   _____
4. It wasn't necessary for you to bring the money. (needn't)
   _____
5. I'm sure he didn't steal the money. (can't)
   _____

D Choose the correct answer: (deduction about the past)

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: (استنتاج عن الماضي)

1. They are not in the office now. They _____ have left.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
2. She looks so happy. She _____ have received good news.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
3. I'm sure he didn't see the sign. He _____ have known.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
4. He failed the exam. He _____ have studied well.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
5. The cake was eaten. Someone _____ have taken it.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might

E Rewrite using (have + past participle):

أعد كتابة الجملة باستخدام (have + P.P)

1. He is not here now. (leave)
   He _____.
2. She doesn't know the answer. (forget)
   She _____.
3. They aren't at school now. (go)
   They _____.
4. This door is open. (someone / open)
   Someone _____.
5. He is very tired. (work all night)
   He _____.

F Complete the mini-dialogue:

أكمل الحوار التالي:

Omar : Why are you so late, Ali?
Ali : I'm sorry. I _____ (might / must) have missed the bus.
Omar : This is your book, isn't it?
Ali : No, it _____ (can't / mustn't) be mine. Mine is black.
Omar : Where is Sara?
Ali : She _____ (may / must) be in the library.
Omar : I'm sure you are hungry.
Ali : Yes, I _____ (might / must) eat something.
Omar : Good idea!

Exam Tips

1. حدد الفكرة الرئيسية: هل تتحدث عن الآن أم عن الماضي؟
2. استبعد الإجابات التي لا تعبر عن الاستنتاج أو الاحتمال.
3. تذكر درجات الاحتمال:
   must > can't > might > may > could
4. مع الماضي استخدم (have + p.p).
5. اقرأ الجملة كاملة قبل الإجابة.

Common Mistakes

- الخلط بين (must) و (have to).
- استخدام must مع الماضي بدون (have + P.P).
- استخدام (may) للتأكيد (خطأ).
- نسيان النفي مع (can't).

✗ He must left. ✓ He must have left.
✗ She may be late sure. ✓ She may be late.

Golden Note

تذكر دائماً:

- must = يقين / can't = نفي قوي.
- احتمال = might / may / could.
- استنتاج عن الماضي = must have / can't have.
- ندم / نماضي = ندم / نصيحة في الماضي.

★ The Future of Learning ★

مستقبل التعلم

Lesson 7

Exercises on Regret & Criticism

تدريبات على الندم واللوم في الماضي

تدريبات متنوعة تساعدك على استخدام الأفعال المساعدة للتعبير عن الندم واللوم في الماضي بشكل صحيح.

Various exercises to help you use modal verbs to express regret and criticism in the past correctly.

A Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. You _____ have been more careful. You broke the vase.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought to d) must
2. I _____ have shouted at him. I'm really sorry.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought d) can
3. She _____ have listened to the doctor's advice.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought to d) must
4. We _____ have left earlier. We missed the train.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought d) can
5. He _____ have taken the medicine. Now he is worse.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought to d) can
6. I _____ have gone to the party, but I was tired.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought to d) must
7. They _____ have been more polite to their teacher.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought to d) must
8. You _____ have told me the truth from the beginning.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought d) can
9. We _____ have studied harder last year.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought to d) must

B Rewrite using (should have / shouldn't have / ought to have): أعد كتابة الجمل بلستخدام:(كان ينبغي أن / مان ينبغي أن / كان من المفترض أن)

1. You didn't lock the door. Someone stole your bag. (should have)
   _____
2. I spent all my money. Now I have nothing left. (shouldn't have)
   _____
3. He didn't apologize. Now his friend is angry. (ought to have)
   _____
4. We didn't practice enough. That's why we lost the match. (should have)
   _____
5. She ate too much cake. Now she has a stomachache. (shouldn't have)
   _____
6. They didn't ask for help. Now they are in trouble. (ought to have)
   _____
7. I forgot your birthday. I feel so bad. (should have)
   _____
8. He didn't prepare well for the test. He failed. (should have)
   _____

C Complete the sentences with the correct form: أكمل الجمل بلستخدام الشكل الصحيح:

1. You _____ (study) harder. You will fail.
2. We _____ (leave) earlier.
3. She _____ (not / be) so rude to her friend.
4. You _____ (take) your umbrella. It rained.
5. He _____ (apologize) to his mother.
6. They _____ (not / waste) so much time.
7. I _____ (call) you, but I forgot.
8. You _____ (tell) me the truth.

D Read each situation and write what you would say using regret or criticism: اقرأ الموقف واكتب ما تقوله باستخدام الندم أو اللوم:

1. You didn't bring your ID card and you can't enter the exam.
   → You _____
2. Your friend is angry because you didn't keep your promise.
   → You _____
3. Your brother didn't help at home, and your mother is upset.
   → You _____
4. You didn't listen to the teacher and now you don't understand the lesson.
   → You _____
5. You spent too much time on your phone and didn't finish your project.
   → You _____

E Choose the correct answer: (Text completion) اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: (اكمل النص)

Omar is a university student. Last week, he didn't go to classes. He stayed at home and played video games. Now he has many problems. He _____ (1) gone to classes. He _____ (2) so much time. He _____ (3) studied harder. He _____ (4) for the test. Now he feels sthat he _____ (5) more responsible.

1. a) should have b) shouldn't have c) must have d) can have
2. a) wasted b) wastes c) wasting d) waste
3. a) should b) shouldn't c) ought to d) must
4. a) prepared b) prepare c) preparing d) preparation
5. a) must be b) can be c) should be d) shouldn't be

F Put the words in the correct order: رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. should / have / listened / I / to / my / mother
   _____
2. they / earlier / ought / to / have / left
   _____
3. he / shouldn't / have / lied / to / you
   _____
4. studied / you / should / have / harder
   _____
5. gone / might / there / have / he
   _____
6. so / much / money / you / shouldn't / have / spent
   _____
7. to / her / ought / have / you / apologized
   _____
8. we / should / more / careful / have / been
   _____

Exam Tips ☆ تصائح للامتحان

- ✓ استخدم (should have) للندم.
- ✓ استخدم (shouldn't have) للندم على فعل خاطئ.
- ✓ استخدم (ought to have) للنصيحة واللوم الرسمي.
- ✓ لاحظ أن الفعل الرئيسي يكون في التصريف الثالث (P.P).

Common Mistakes ⊗ أخطاء شائعة

✗	✓
You should to study.	You should have studied.
I shouldn't have went.	I shouldn't have gone.
He ought have apologized.	He ought to have apologized.

Golden Note

تذكر دائماً:

الندم لا يغير الماضي...

لكن التعلم منه يصنع مستقبلاً أفضل.

★ The Future of Learning ★

مستقبل التعلم

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

Lesson 8

Mixed Exercises on All Modal Verbs

تدريبات شاملة على جميع أفعال الموداال

تدريبات شاملة ومتنوعة على الاستنتاج - الاحتمال - النوم والنوم - التعبير عن الماضي - مقارنة الأفعال المساعدة.

Comprehensive exercises on deduction – possibility – regret & criticism – past forms – and comparing modals.

A Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He is not at home. He _____ be at the club.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
2. The lights are off. Someone _____ be sleeping.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
3. I think Sam has left. He _____ have finished early.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
4. This can't be Jack's bag. His bag is black.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
5. You _____ have studied harder. You failed the test.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) ought to d) must
6. He _____ have taken my pen. It's on his desk.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
7. They _____ have arrived by now. It's too late.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
8. I'm too tired. I _____ have stayed up late last night.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
9. She _____ have seen the film before. She knows all the details.
   a) must b) can't c) may d) might
10. It's very cold in here. The window _____ be closed.
    a) must b) can't c) may d) might
11. He acted strangely. Something _____ be wrong.
    a) must b) can't c) may d) might
12. You _____ have washed the car. It's very clean.
    a) must b) can't c) may d) might

B Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين القوسين:

1. I'm sure he is honest. He _____ (tell) the truth.
2. Look at the sky! It _____ (rain).
3. She isn't here. She _____ (go) to the library.
4. You didn't lock the door. Someone _____ (come) in.
5. You should have taken your medicine. Now you _____ (be) sick.
6. They _____ (not / listen) to the teacher. That's why they failed.
7. He _____ (study) medicine at university.
8. You shouldn't have been so rude to your friend. You _____ (apologize).
9. I forgot my homework. I _____ (leave) it at home.
10. He _____ (prepare) well for the match. That's why he won.

C Rewrite using (must / can't / may / might / could):

أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام فعل مودال مناسب:

1. This is definitely her pen. (must) _____
2. It's not possible that he is at school. (can't) _____
3. It's possible that Jameel will come. (may) _____
4. It's not very certain that she likes the idea. (might) _____
5. It's possible that they forgot the meeting. (could) _____
6. I'm sure he is not telling the truth. (can't) _____
7. This book is very old. He wrote it a long time ago. (must) _____
8. I'm not sure if they are at home. (might) _____
9. He may be busy now, but he will call you later. (may) _____
10. It couldn't be Ahmed. I saw him at the station. (can't) _____

D Read the situations and write what you would say:

اقرأ المواقف واكتب ما تقوله باستخدام الموداال المناسب:

1. Your friend didn't study and failed the exam.
2. You lost your wallet yesterday.
3. Your brother was out late last night.
4. You didn't water the plants and they died.
5. You are not sure if the shop is open today.
6. The food tastes very salty.
7. Your teacher helped you a lot.
8. You are certain that your friend is innocent.

E Choose the correct answer: (Text completion)

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: (اكمل النص)

Last night, I was very tired, so (1) _____ have gone to bed early.
This morning, I (2) _____ have missed the bus because I woke up late.
When I arrived at school, I found that I (3) _____ have left my notebook at home.
Luckily, my friend helped me. I (4) _____ have done well in the test because I studied hard.
The teacher said I (5) _____ be careful next time.
This mistake (6) _____ happen again.
To be successful, you (7) _____ work hard and you (8) _____ give up.
If you do your best, you (9) _____ achieve your dreams.
I believe you (10) _____ be proud of yourself.

1	a) must	b) might	c) can't	d) may
2	a) can't	b) must	c) might	d) could
3	a) can't	b) must	c) might	d) could
4	a) must	b) can't	c) might	d) should
5	a) must	b) should	c) might	d) can
6	a) can't	b) mustn't	c) shouldn't	d) may
7	a) must	b) should	c) can	d) might
8	a) must	b) shouldn't	c) can	d) may
9	a) can	b) might	c) must	d) should
10	a) must	b) can	c) may	d) might

F Correct the mistakes: صحح الأخطاء في الجمل التالية:

1. He must have went to the cinema last night.
2. You can't to be late for school.
3. She may have win the competition.
4. I should have to study more.
5. You mustn't have been so rude.
6. He can have passed the exam easily.
7. They might have went to the park.
8. I should of called you yesterday.
9. She can't have took my book.
10. He must left his bag on the bus.

Exam Tips

1. اختر النوع المودال المناسب حسب قوة الاستنتاج أو الاحتمال.
2. لاحظ استخدام (have + P.P) عند الحديث عن الماضي.
3. غالباً ستكون الإجابة في نهاية الجملة (must – can't – may – might).
4. في أسئلة الندم استخدم (should have – shouldn't have).
5. اقرأ الجملة جيداً وحدد فكرة الكاتب قبل الاختيار.

Common Mistakes

- ✗ استخدام المصدر بدون to بعد الأفعال المودال.
- ✗ الخلط بين (must) و (have P.P).
- ✗ نسيان (have) في الماضي.
- ✗ استخدام (should) بدل (should have) في الندم.
- ✗ الخلط بين (may) و (might) في الاحتمال.

Golden Note

كلما كانت الفعل المساعد أقوي، كان الاستنتاج أو الاحتمال أيضا.
احفظ الأغلب استخدامات الموداالت.
وتدرب عليها باستمرار.

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد
موبايل واتس
01095006994

★ The Future of Learning ★

مستقبل التعلم

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

Lesson 9

Advanced Exercises & Real Life Situations

تدريبات متقدمة ومواقف حياتية

تدريبات متقدمة تعتمد على الفهم العميق واستخدام الأفعال المساعدة بشكل صحيح في مواقف واقعية.

Advanced exercises that develop deep understanding and correct use of modal verbs in real life situations.

A Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. If I had more time, I _____ join the volunteer team.
   a) must b) can c) might d) should
2. You _____ have forgotten your keys. They are here.
   a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) may
3. She _____ be in the meeting now. I saw her go in.
   a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) might
4. They _____ have taken the wrong bus.
   a) must b) mustn't c) might d) can't
5. _____ I borrow your pen, please?
   a) Must b) Could c) Can d) May
6. He looks very pale. He _____ see a doctor.
   a) must b) might c) should d) can
7. You _____ touch the hot pan! It's dangerous.
   a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) might
8. The project _____ be ready by Friday.
   a) must b) might c) should d) can't
9. I _____ have submitted the form on time.
   a) must b) might c) should d) can't
10. It's possible that it _____ rain later.
    a) must b) might c) should d) can

B Complete the sentences using the most suitable modal:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام الفعل المساعد الأنسب:

1. You didn't answer my calls. You _____ be busy. (might)
2. This medicine is very old. You _____ take it. (mustn't)
3. The baby is crying a lot. He _____ be hungry. (may)
4. We _____ respect our teachers. (must)
5. She didn't study hard. She _____ pass the exam. (can't)
6. That road is closed. You _____ take another way. (should)
7. I'm not sure, but he _____ arrive tomorrow. (might)
8. You _____ waste food. It's not good. (mustn't)
9. He looks tired. He _____ have stayed up late. (must)
10. We _____ protect the environment for the future. (must)

C Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets:

أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام الكلمة بين القوسين:

1. I'm sure he is at the airport. (must) _____
2. Maybe she will come to the party. (might) _____
3. You are not allowed to smoke here. (mustn't) _____
4. It isn't possible that Ali did that. (can't) _____
5. It's a good idea to drink a lot of water. (should) _____
6. Is it possible for you to help me? (could) _____
7. I'm very sorry for what I did. (shouldn't) _____
8. I don't know the answer. (might) _____
9. It's necessary to be on time. (must) _____
10. Perhaps they haven't seen my message. (may) _____

D Read the situations and write what you would say:

اقرأ المواقف واكتب ما تقوله باستخدام أحد الأفعال المساعدة:

1. Your friend is upset because he failed the test.
   → You _____
2. You see someone littering in the street.
   → You _____
3. Your brother wants to stay up late and watch a movie.
   → You _____
4. You didn't understand the lesson.
   → You _____
5. Your friend is going to travel alone.
   → You _____
6. You are not sure about the answer.
   → You _____

E Read the text and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ النص ثم اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Last weekend, my family and I went on a trip to Aswan. We (1) _____ leave early because we wanted to arrive before noon. The weather was great, and we (2) _____ take a boat ride on the Nile. My little sister was afraid at first, but we told her she (3) _____ worry because the ride was safe.
During the trip, we (4) _____ visit the Philae Temple. The guide explained everything clearly, and we (5) _____ ask many questions. We were so happy that we (6) _____ want to come back again.

1. a) must b) can't c) should d) might
2. a) must b) might c) should d) can
3. a) must b) mustn't c) can't d) should
4. a) must b) might c) should d) can't
5. a) should b) can't c) must d) might
6. a) mustn't b) might c) can't d) should

F Transform the sentences as shown in brackets:

حوّل الجمل كما هو مطلوب بين القوسين:

1. He didn't sleep well, so he is tired. (Use must / can't / might to show reason) _____
2. I don't know the answer. (Use might to show possibility) _____
3. It's not allowed to enter the exam late. (Use mustn't) _____
4. She was so sick. She couldn't go to school. (Use couldn't) _____
5. It's a good idea to eat healthy food. (Use should) _____
6. Is it possible for you to lend me your book? (Use could) _____
7. Perhaps they have finished the work. (Use may) _____
8. You are sure about it. (Use must) _____

Exam Tips ☆

- ✓ اقرأ السؤال جيداً وحدد معنى الجملة قبل الإجابة.
- ✓ لاحظ الزمن (الحاضر / الماضي) لتختار الفعل المناسب.
- ✓ تذكر الفرق بين (must / have to) و (should).
- ✓ في الأسئلة المقالية، أعط سبباً واضحاً لاختيارك.
- ✓ راجع أخطاءك دائماً قبل تسليم الإجابة.

Common Mistakes ⊗

- ✗ استخدام الـ must مع (must!) بشكل خاطئ.
- ✗ الخلط بين can't و mustn't.
- ✗ نسيان استخدام الشكل الثالث للفعل بعد (have).
- ✗ استخدام might عند اليقين.
- ✗ نسيان وضع المصدر بدون (to) بعد الأفعال + (to)

Golden Note

تذكر دائماً:
الأفعال المساعدة ليست صعبة،
لكن فهم معناها واستخدامها الصحيح
هو سر النجاح في اللغة الإنجليزية.

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

تتناول هذه الوحدة بعض قواعد اللغة المهمة جداً للتعبير عن:
الشرط بأنواعه – الأمنيات والندم – النصيحة – التعبير عن الظروف المختلفة.

أهداف التعلم

بنهاية دراسة هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرا على أن:

- يتعرف و يستخدم جمل الشرط بأنواعها المختلفة.
- يميز بين أنواع الشرط (صفر – أول – ثاني – ثالث – مختلط).
- يستخدم (Unless – As long as – Provided (that) بشكل صحيح.
- يتعرف و يستخدم (In case – Even if).
- يستخدم (Wish – If only) للتعبير عن الأمنيات والندم.
- يستخدم (I'd rather – It's time – Had better) بشكل صحيح.
- يحل تدريبات متنوعة على هذه القواعد.
- يتجنب الأخطاء الشائعة في الامتحانات.
- يكتسب مهارات الاختيار الصحيح وإعادة الصياغة.
- يتدرب على أسئلة شاملة على جميع أجزاء الوحدة.

خريطة قواعد الوحدة

Unit 4 Grammar

1. Conditionals (Zero – First) — الشرط (صفر – أول)
2. Second Conditional — الشرط الثاني
3. Third Conditional — الشرط الثالث
4. Mixed Conditionals — الشرط المختلط
5. Unless – As long as – Provided (that) – In case – Even if — قواعد الظروف المختلفة
6. Wish & If only — الأمنيات والندم
7. I'd rather – It's time – Had better — التفضيل – الوقت – النصيحة
8. Common Mistakes — الأخطاء الشائعة
9. Exam Tips — نصائح الامتحان
10. Exercises & Review — تدريبات ومراجعة شاملة

تذكر جيداً

- ★ جمل الشرط تُستخدم للتعبير عن أفكار مرتبطة بحدوث شيء أو عدم حدوثه .
- ★ الأمنيات والندم تُساعدنا على التعبير عن مشاعرنا تجاه ماض أو حاضر أو مستقبل.
- ★ النصيحة والتفضيل تُستخدم في الحياة اليومية واتصلاتنا المختلفة .
- ★ الفهم الجيد للقواعد + التدريب المستمر = النجاح في الامتحان.

أهم الكلمات

imagine	(v)	يتخيل	result	(n)	نتيجة
condition	(n)	شرط	suggest	(v)	يقترح
regret	(v)	يندم	decision	(n)	قرار
advise	(v)	ينصح	possible	(adj)	ممكن
opportunity	(n)	فرصة	impossible	(adj)	مستحيل
attend	(v)	يحضر	benefit	(n)	فائدة

chance	(n)	فرصة
mistake	(n)	خطأ
prepare	(v)	يستعد
fail	(v)	يفشل
success	(n)	نجاح
advice	(n)	نصيحة

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

Lesson 1

Conditionals (Zero – First)

الشرط (صفر – أول)

نستخدم جمل الشرط للتعبير عن نتيجة حدث يحدث إذا تحقق شرط معين.
هناك نوعان مهمان جداً: الشرط الصفري للتحدث عن الحقائق والعادات، والشرط الأول للتحدث عن احتمالات حقيقية في المستقبل.

Zero Conditional . (الشرط الصفري)

يستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق علمية، وقوانين طبيعية، وعادات ثابتة، وأشياء تحدث دائماً.

الأمثلة

- If you heat water, it boils. — إذا سخنت الماء، فإنه يغلي.
- If people don't eat, they get hungry. — إذا لم يأكل الناس، فإنهم يشعرون بالجوع.
- When you mix red and blue, you get purple. — عندما تخلط الأحمر بالأزرق، تحصل على البنفسجي.
- If it rains, the ground gets wet. — إذا امطر، يصبح الأرض مبللة.
- If you don't sleep, you feel tired. — إذا لم تنم، تشعر بالتعب.
- It melts if you put ice in the sun. — يذوب الجليد إذا وضعته في الشمس.

التركيب

Present Simple	,	If + Present Simple
مضارع بسيط		إذا + مضارع بسيط

الكلمات الدالة (Signal Words)

always – usually – often – sometimes – never
every day – every week – when – if – unless
as long as – the moment

لاحظ

- يمكن قلب الجملة دون تغيير المعنى.
- الفاصلة (,) بعد if أختيارية.
- تستخدم when بنفس معنى if في هذا النوع.

الفرق بين If و When في الشرط الصفري

When	If
• تعني (عندما) وتستخدم عندما نتحدث عن وقت محدد أو حدث متكرر.	• أكثر شيوعاً وتستخدم في كل المواقف.
• لا تستخدم للتعبير عن المستقبل البعيد.	• يمكن أن تتحدث عن if اختيقبل.

First Conditional : (الشرط الأول)

يستخدم للتعبير عن احتمال حقيقي في المستقبل، ونتيجة ممكنة إذا تحقق الشرط.

الأمثلة

- If I study hard, I will pass the exam. — إذا درست بجد، فسوف أنجح في الامتحان.
- If it rains, we will stay at home. — إذا امطر، فسنبقى في المنزل.
- If you are late, you will miss the bus. — إذا تأخرت، فسوف تفوت الحافلة.
- Unless you hurry, you will be late. — ما لم تتعجل، فسوف تتأخر.
- I will call you if I see you. — سأتصل بك إذا رأيتك.
- If he doesn't study, he won't pass. — إذا لم يدرس، فهو لن ينجح.
- If you need help, I will help you. — إذا احتجت إلى مساعدة، فسأعدك.
- If we save money, we will buy a new car. — إذا وفرنا المال، فسوف تشتري سيارة جديدة.
- If you heat ice, it will melt. — إذا سخنت الجليد، فسوف يذوب.
- If she is free, she will come with us. — إذا كلنت حرة، فستأتي معنا.

التركيب

will + infinitive	,	If + Present Simple
سوف + فعل مجرد		إذا + مضارع بسيط

الاستخدامات

1. التوقعات المستقبلية المبنية على شرط حقيقي.
2. التحذير من نتيجة محتملة.
3. الوعود والقرارات الفورية.
4. العروض والاقتراحات.

الكلمات الدالة (Signal Words)

if – unless – as long as – in case – when
when – before – after – until – as soon as
so that – once

لاحظ

- لا نضع will في جملة الشرط.
- نستخدم won't في النفي.
- يمكن استخدام can – could – may – might بدلاً من will للتعبير عن احتمالات مختلفة.

مقارنة سريعة بين شرط (صفر) وشرط (لأول)

First Conditional (الشرط الأول)	Zero Conditional (الشرط الصفري)
يتحدث عن احتمالات حقيقية في المستقبل.	يتحدث عن حقائق وعادات ثابتة.
النتيجة ممكنة الحدوث.	الناتج دائماً يحدث.
إذا تحقق الشرط، قد تحدث النتيجة.	إذا تحقق الشرط، فإن النتيجة تحدث دائماً.
If + Present Simple , will + infinitive	If + Present Simple , Present Simple
If you drop glass, it will break.	If you drop glass, it breaks.

نصائح ذهبية

- الكلمات الدالة تساعدك كثيراً في الإجابة على أي سؤال في هذا الموضوع.
- في الشرط الأول: المضارع بسيط بعد if وسوف + فعل مجرد في الجملة الثانية.
- لاحظ زمن الجملة الرئيسية لتحديد نوع الشرط. في الشرط الصفري: المضارع بسيط في الجملتين.

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

Lesson 2

Second Conditional
الشرط الثاني

تستخدم الشرط الثاني للتعبير عن مواقف خيالية أو غير حقيقية في الوقت الحاضر أو المستقبل. نتخيل أن شيئًا مختلفًا عن الواقع يحدث، ونوضح نتيجته.

التركيب

If + Past Simple (was / weren't) , would + infinitive (without to)

إذا + فعل ماض بسيط — فعل مساعد (would) + مصدر مجرد

أمثلة

- If I were you, I would study harder. — لو كنت مكانك، لدرست أكثر.
- If we had more time, we would travel around the world. — لو كان لدينا وقت أكثر، لسافرنا حول العالم.
- If it didn't rain tomorrow, we would go to the beach. — لو لم يمطر غدًا، لذهبنا إلى الشاطئ.
- If he were taller, he would be a basketball player. — لو كان أطول، لكان لاعب كرة سلة.
- If I won the lottery, I would buy a big house. — لو فزت في اليانصيب، لاشتريت بيتًا كبيرًا.
- If you spoke English well, you would get a good job. — لو كنت تتحدث الإنجليزية جيدًا، لحصلت على وظيفة جيدة.
- If I had a car, I would visit my grandparents every week. — لو كان لدي سيارة، لزرت جدي وجدتي كل أسبوع.
- If we lived near the sea, we would swim every day. — لو كنا نعيش بالقرب من البحر، لكنا نسبح كل يوم.

الاستخدامات

1. للتعبير عن مواقف غير حقيقية في الحاضر. (أمور لا يمكن أن تحدث الآن).
2. لتخيل مواقف مستقبلية غير محتملة أو
3. لتقديم نصيحة أو اقتراح بطريقة مهذبة.
4. للتعبير عن الرغبة في تغيير الوضع الحالي، بطريقة خيالية.
5. في القصص والحكايات لبناء أحداث خيالية.

الفرق بين الشرط الأول والشرط الثاني

الشرط الثاني (غير حقيقي)	الشرط الأول (حقيقي)	وجه المقارنة
غير حقيقي.	احتمال حقيقي في المستقبل.	الاحتمال
Pesent (was / weren't)	Present Simple	الزمن في جملة الشرط
الزمن في جملة النتيجة.	will + infinitive	الزمن في جملة النتيجة
If it rained, we would stay home. لو أمطر، لبقينا في المنزل.	If it rains, we will stay home. إذا أمطر، سنبقى في المنزل.	مثال

الكلمات الدالة (Signal Words)

if – if only – even if – as if – suppose
supposing – imagine – unless
provided (that) – in case

تساعدنا هذه الكلمات على معرفة أن الجملة النوع الثاني.

ملاحظات مهمة

- ★ تستخدم (were) مع جميع الضمائر (I / he / she / it / you / we / they) في الشرط الثاني.
- ★ تستخدم (would) مع جميع الضمائر في جملة النتيجة.
- ★ في السؤال نضع (were) في البداية: (Were you at home yesterday? Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.)
- ★ تستخدم (could) من للتعبير عن قدرة غير حقيقية أو طلب مهذب: (If I had more money, I could help you.)

A Choose the correct answer:

1. If I _____ rich, I would help the poor.
   a) am b) was c) were d) be
2. If she _____ more confident, she would speak in front of people.
   a) is b) was c) were d) be
3. If they _____ late, they would miss the bus.
   a) are b) were c) was d) be
4. If I _____ you, I would accept the job.
   a) am b) was c) were d) be
5. If we _____ in a big city, we would have more opportunities.
   a) live b) lived c) lives d) living
6. If he _____ harder, he would get better marks.
   a) study b) studies c) studied d) studying
7. If I _____ a bird, I would fly in the sky.
   a) am b) was c) were d) be
8. If you _____ more often, you would be healthier.
   a) exercise b) exercised c) exercises d) exercising

B Rewrite using Second Conditional:

1. I am too young to drive a car.
   → If I _____
2. He is very busy, so he can't help you.
   → If he _____
3. We don't have a garden.
   → If we _____
4. It doesn't snow in Egypt.
   → If it _____
5. She doesn't study English well.
   → If she _____
6. They have a small house.
   → If they _____

Exam Tips

- ✓ ابحث عن كلمات مثل - if (imagine – imagine).
- ✓ لاحظ أن الجملة تتحدث عن موقف غير حقيقي.
- ✓ تذكر أن الجملة تبدأ غالبًا بـ (If + Past Simple).
- ✓ في النتيجة دائما لستخدم (would + infinitive).

Common Mistakes

- × إذا استخدمت (am / is) الضمائر في الشرط الثاني.
- × إذا استخدمت (will) بعد (I) في الشرط الثاني.
- × إذا نسيت (would) في جملة النتيجة.
- × إذا أضفت (to) بعد (would).

Golden Note

الشرط الثاني يحكي عن الخيال...
نتمنى لو الشيء مختلف الآن.
وتتخيل ماذا ستكون النتيجة.

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

Lesson 3

Third Conditional
الشرط الثالث

يُستخدم الشرط الثالث للتعبير عن الندم على شيء لم يحدث في الماضي، أو للتخيل عن نتيجة خيالية لم تتحقق بسبب شيء حدث في الماضي.

If + Past Perfect, would have + Past Participle (P.P.)
للتصريف الثالث + (would have) + (P.P. + الثالث فعلا had)

ملاحظات مهمة

- ★ نستخدم (had) مع جميع الضمائر (I / he / she / it / you / we / they).
- ★ نستخدم (would have) مع جميع الضمائر.
- ★ دائماً نستخدم التصريف الثالث (P.P.) بدون تغيير.
- ★ للسؤال نضع (had) قبل الفاعل:
  Had you studied well?
- ★ للنفي نضع (had not) أو (hadn't):
  If he hadn't studied, ...
- ★ في الإجابات القصيرة نستخدم:
  Yes, I would have.
  / No, I wouldn't have.

أمثلة

- If I had studied well, I would have passed the exam.
  لو أنني درست جيدًا، لكنت نجحت في الامتحان.
- If we had left earlier, we would have caught the train.
  لو أننا غادرنا مبكرًا، لكنا أدركنا القطار.
- If she had listened to her teacher, she wouldn't have had problems.
  لو أنها استمعت إلى معلمها، لما كان لديها مشاكل.
- If I had known your number, I would have called you.
  لو أنني كنت أعرف رقمك، لكنت اتصلت بك.
- If they had taken the medicine, they wouldn't have been ill.
  لو أنهم تناولوا الدواء، لما مرضوا.
- If you had saved money, you would have bought a new car.
  لو كُنتَ ادخرت المال، لكنت اشتريت سيارة جديدة.
- If he had worked harder, he would have got a better job.
  لو أنه عمل بجد أكثر، لكن حصل على وظيفة أفضل.
- If we had prepared well, we wouldn't have lost the match.
  لو أننا استعددنا جيدًا، لما خسرنا المباراة.
- If I hadn't missed the bus, I wouldn't have been late.
  لو أنني لم أفت الحافلة، لما تأخرت.

التركيب

If + had + P.P. , would have + P.P.
إذا + ماض تام , كان + تصريف ثالث

الاستخدامات

1. للتعبير عن الندم والحسرة على ما حدث في الماضي.
   (أفكار: لو أنني فعلت... لكنت ...)
2. للتخيل عن نتيجة لم تتحقق بسبب حدث في الماضي.
3. لإعطاء نصيحة ناتجة من تجربة سابقة.
4. للتعبير عن افتراض غير حقيقي يتعلق بالماضي.
5. في القصص والروايات والسيناريوهات.

الكلمات الدالة (Signal Words)

if only – I wish – I'd wish – if (just) – otherwise – but – however unfortunately – sadly – regrettably in vain

الفرق بين الشرط الثاني والشرط الثالث

وجه المفارنة	الشرط الثاني (غير حقيقي في والمستقبل)	الشرط الثالث (غير حقيقي في الماضي)
الزمن في جملة الشرط	If + Past Simple (were / didn't)	If + Past Perfect (had + P.P.)
الزمن في جملة النتيجة	would + infinitive	would have + Past Participle
الفكرة	نتيجة خيالية أو غير ممكنة الآن أو في المستقبل.	ندم أو حسرة على ما حدث في الماضي ولم يتغير.
مثال	If I were rich, I would buy a big house. لو كنت لم غنيًا، لكنت اشتريت بيتًا كبيرًا.	If I had been rich, I would have bought a big house. لو أنني كنت غنيًا، لكنت اشتريت بيتًا كبيرًا.
ملحوظة	لا يوجد ندم، مجرد تخيل.	يوجد ندم أو حسرة.

تفصيل استخدامات الشرط الثالث مع الأمثلة

الاستخدام	الشرح	أمثلة
1 الندم والحسرة	نستخدمه عندما نشعر بالحسرة على شيء لم يحدث في الماضي وكانت نتيجته ستكون مختلفة.	If I had apologized, she would have forgiven me. لو أنني اعتذرت، لكانت سامحتني.
2 تخيل نتيجة لم تحدث	نتخيل نتيجة حدث في الماضي لكنها لم تحدث بالفعل.	If we had won the match, we would have been happy. لو فزنا بالمباراة، لكنا كنا سعداء.
3 نصيحة من تجربة	نعطي نصيحة للآخرين بناء على تجربة في الماضي.	If I were you, I wouldn't trust him after what happened. لو كنت مكانك، لكنت لا أثق به بعد ما حدث.
4 افتراض غير حقيقي	نتحدث عن افتراض خيالي في الماضي.	If she had been taller, she would have joined the team. لو أنها كانت أطول، لكنت انضمت للفريق.
5 في القصص والروايات	يستخدم بكثرة في القصص لوصف أحداث خيالية في الماضي.	If the king had known the truth, he would have changed his decision. لو أن الملك كان عرف الحقيقة، لكن غير قراره.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. If I _____ harder, I would have succeeded.
   a) study b) studied c) had studied d) studying
2. If they _____ the rules, they wouldn't have been punished.
   a) follow b) followed c) had followed d) following
3. If we _____ the news, we would have helped them.
   a) hear b) heard c) had heard d) hearing
4. If he _____ his homework, the teacher would have been angry.
   a) didn't do b) doesn't do c) hadn't done d) not doing
5. If I _____ rich, I would have traveled the world.
   a) am b) was c) had been d) be
6. If the weather _____ nice, we would have gone out.
   a) is b) was c) had been d) were

B Rewrite using Third Conditional:

1. I didn't know the answer. (know)
   → If _____
2. She lost the key. (not lose)
   → If _____
3. We arrived late. (leave)
   → If _____
4. He didn't take the medicine. (take)
   → If _____
5. They failed the exam. (study)
   → If _____
6. It rained. So we stayed home. (not rain)
   → If _____

C Complete with (had – would have):

1. If I _____ more time, I _____ visited you.
2. If we _____ left early, we _____ missed the traffic.
3. If she _____ listened to me, she _____ avoided the problem.
4. If he _____ worked harder, he _____ got a better job.
5. If I _____ known your number, I _____ called you.
6. If they _____ saved money, they _____ bought a new car.

Exam Tips

- ✓ ابحث عن كلمات تدل على الندم مثل (if only – I wish – (if only).
- ✓ ركز على وجود (had) + P.P. + (if) لتحديد النوع.
- ✓ لا تنس أنك تستخدم دائمًا دللما (have + P.P.) الضمائر.
- ✓ في الإجابة القصيرة: Yes, I would have. / No, I wouldn't have.

Common Mistakes

- × نسيان (had) في جملة الشرط.
- × استخدام (will + have + P.P.) بالخطأ.
- × استخدام (was) بدل (were) في كل الضمائر.
- × استخدام التصريف الثاني بدل الثالث (P.P.).

Golden Note

الشرط الثالث دائماً يتحدث عن الماضي ويعبر عن الندم أو نتيجة لم تحدث.
افهم الفكرة أولاً، ثم طبق القاعدة.

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

Lesson 4

Mixed Conditionals
الشرط المختلط

نستخدم الشرط المختلط للتعبير عن مواقف لا تتحدث عن وقت واحد. يجمع بين ماض وحاضر أو ماض وماض آخر.

أنواع الشرط المختلط (Mixed Conditionals)

1 النوع الأول

If + Past Perfect , would + infinitive

إذا + ماض تام , كان لسن + فعل مجرد

يتحدث عن حدث في الماضي ونتيجته مختلفة في الوقت الحاضر أو المستقبل.
(تخيل عن الماضي ونتيجة خيالية الآن أو في المستقبل)

مثال:

- **If I had studied hard, I would be a doctor now.**
  لو أني درست بجد، لكنت طبيباً الآن.
- **If they had taken the umbrella, they wouldn't be wet now.**
  لو أخذوا المظلة، لما كانوا مبللين الآن.
- **If we had saved money, we would travel around the world.**
  لو كنا ادخرنا المال، لكنا سافرنا حول العالم.

2 النوع الثاني

If + Past Simple , would have + P.P.

إذا + ماض بسيط , كان لسن + التصريف الثالث

يتحدث عن حدث في الماضي أدى إلى نتيجة مختلفة في الحاضر.
(ندم على شيء في الماضي أثر على الحاضر)

مثال:

- **If I didn't miss the bus, I would have arrived on time.**
  لو لم أفت الأتوبيس، لكنت وصلت في الموعد.
- **If we didn't argue yesterday, we wouldn't be angry now.**
  لو لم نتشاجر بالأمس، لما كنا غاضبين الآن.
- **If she didn't eat a lot, she wouldn't feel sick now.**
  لو لم تأكل كثيراً، لما شعرت بالمرض الآن.

مقارنة شاملة بين جميع أنواع الشرط (Comparison of All Conditionals)

	نوع الشرط	التركيب (if .....)	(لتنيجة) Result	الاستخدام	مثال	كلمة مفتاحية
1	الشرط الصفري (Zero)	If + Present Simple	Present Simple	حقائق علمية، حقائق ثابتة	If water boils, it turns to steam. إذا غلى الماء، يتحول إلى بخار.	always, usually, every day
2	الشرط الأول (First)	If + Present Simple	will + infinitive	احتمال حقيقي في المستقبل	If it rains, we will stay home. إذا أمطر، سنبقى في المنزل.	if, when, unless, as soon as
3	الشرط الثاني (Second)	If + Past Simple	would + infinitive	موقف خيالي أو غير حقيقي في الحاضر/المستقبل	If I were rich, I would travel. لو كنت غنيًا، لسافرت.	if, if only, suppose
4	الشرط الثالث (Third)	If + Past Perfect	would have + P.P.	ندم على الماضي / افتراض في الماضي	If he had studied, he would have passed. لو درس، لنجح.	if, if only, wish
5	الشرط المختلط (Type 1)	If + Past Perfect	would + infinitive	ماض مختلفة الآن/المستقبل	If I had studied, I would be a doctor now. لو درست، لكنت طبيبًا الآن.	if, if only, suppose
6	الشرط المختلط (Type 2)	If + Past Simple	would have + P.P.	ماض مختلف ونتيجته الآن	If I didn't miss the train, I would have arrived. لو لم أفت القطار، لكنت وصلت.	if, if only, wish

نصائح ذهبية للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ الجملة جيداً وحدد ما إذا كان التعبير عن حقيقة أم احتمال أم ندم.
- ✓ إذا كان الحدث في الماضي ونتيجته الآن → استخدم Mixed (Type 1).
- ✓ إذا كان الحدث في الماضي وأثر على الحاضر → استخدم Mixed (Type 2).
- ✓ ركز على كلمات مفتاحية مثل: (if only – Wish – suppose – unless).
- ✓ في إعادة الصياغة، لا تنسى تغيير الزمن، وحافظ على المعنى.

ملاحظات هامة

1. في النوع الأول من الشرط المختلط، نستخدم (P.P.) في جملة الشرط و (would) في جملة النتيجة.
2. في النوع الثاني، نستخدم (didn't) فنصدر (P.P.) في جملة النتيجة، أي would + infinitive، و would have + P.P.
3. نحرص دائماً على تطابق الزمن بين جملة الشرط وجملة النتيجة، حسب النوع.
4. إذا كان الفعل في الشرط " be " في الماضي البسيط نستخدم (were) لكل الأشخاص.
5. كلمات مثل: (suppose – unless – if only + الصدر) تستخدم مع جميع أنواع الشرط.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. If I had known about the party, I _____.
   a) will come b) would come c) would have come d) come
2. If we didn't have practice yesterday, we _____ the match.
   a) would win b) won't win c) wouldn't have won d) win
3. If he had worked harder, he _____ a good job now.
   a) has b) will have c) would have d) have
4. If I didn't forget my notebook, I _____ it now.
   a) would have b) have c) will have d) had
5. If they had saved enough money, they _____ a new car.
   a) bought b) would buy c) would have bought d) buy
6. If she didn't eat unhealthy food, she _____ so tired.
   a) won't be b) wouldn't be c) wouldn't have been d) isn't
7. If I had met you yesterday, I _____ with you now.
   a) will talk b) would talk c) would be talking d) talk
8. If he hadn't left early, he _____ the traffic.
   a) will miss b) would miss c) wouldn't miss d) misses

B Rewrite using Mixed Conditionals:

1. I didn't study yesterday, so I'm in trouble now.
   → If I _____
2. We don't have enough money to travel.
   → If we _____
3. He isn't here because he missed the bus.
   → If he _____
4. She can't speak English well because she didn't practice.
   → If she _____
5. We are wet because we didn't take an umbrella.
   → If we _____
6. I'm not happy because I failed the test.
   → If I _____

C Complete using the correct form:

1. If I _____ (know) the answer, I _____ (tell) you.
2. If they _____ (not argue), they _____ (be) friends now.
3. If he _____ (work) hard, he _____ (be) successful.
4. If I _____ (have) more time, I _____ (help) you.
5. If we _____ (not waste) water, we _____ (save) a lot.
6. If she _____ (study) medicine, she _____ (be) a doctor.

Golden Note

"الشرط المختلط يجمع بين الماضي والحاضر
كن بارعًا في تحديد العلاقة بينهما.
فهذا هو مفتاح الحل الصحيح
في أسئلة الامتحان.

Exam Practice Idea

- ← ركز على أسئلة إعادة الصياغة.
- ← تدرب على تحويل الجمل من نوع لآخر.
- ← انتبه للأسئلة التي تتطلب معنى الجملة لا الكلمات.
- ← حل نماذج امتحانات سابقة.
- ← راجع القواعد مع الكثير من التدريبات.

Common Mistakes

- × استخدام (will) في الشرط الثاني أو الثالث.
- × نسيان (had) في جملة الشرط الثالث.
- × الخلط بين نوعي الشرط المختلط.
- × نسيان التصريف الثالث بعد (would have).
- × عدم الانتباه إلى الكلمات المفتاحية.

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

Lesson 5

Unless – As long as – Provided (that) In case – Even if

قواعد الربط والشرط الخاصة

تستخدم هذه الأدوات للتعبير عن شرط أو استثناء أو احتمال، ويجب الانتباه جيداً لمعناها وتركيبها حتى نستخدمها بشكل صحيح.

1 Unless (إذا لم – ما لم)

تعني (if ... not) أي: إذا لم يحدث شرط معين.

التركيب

Unless + Present Simple , will + infinitive

(ما لم + مضارع بسيط ، سوف + فعل مجرد)

أمثلة

- Unless you hurry, you will miss the bus.
  إذا لم تسرع، سوف تفوت الحافلة.
- Unless it rains, we will go out.
  ما لم تمطر، سنخرج.
- You will fail unless you study well.
  سوف تفشل ما لم تدرس جيدًا.

ملاحظات

- ✓ يمكن أن تأتي في بداية الجملة فقط.
- ✓ من الأخطاء الشائعة: استخدام (if) بدل (unless).

2 As long as (طالما – ما دام)

تعني (on condition that) أي: طالما أنه شرط مستمر.

التركيب

As long as + Present Simple , will + infinitive

(طالما + مضارع بسيط ، سوف + فعل مجرد)

أمثلة

- You can go out as long as you finish your homework.
  يمكنك الخروج طالما أنك تنتهي من واجبك.
- As long as the baby sleeps, be quiet.
  طالما أن الطفل نائم، كن هادئاً.
- We will stay here as long as it is safe.
  ستظل هنا طالما أنه آمن.

ملاحظات

- ✓ يمكن أن تأتي في بداية أو منتصف الجملة.
- ✓ تُستخدم مع الحقيقة أو الاحتمال الحقيقي.

3 Provided (that) (بشرط أن)

تعني (on condition that) أي: على شرط أن.

التركيب

Provided (that) + Present Simple , will + infinitive

(بشرط أن + مضارع بسيط ، سوف + فعل مجرد)

أمثلة

- You can borrow my book provided (that) you bring it back.
  يمكنك استعارة كتابي بشرط أن تعيده.
- Provided (that) it doesn't rain, we will play football.
  بشرط أن لا تمطر، سنلعب كرة القدم.
- They will help you provided that you ask politely.
  سيساعدونك بشرط أن تطلب بأدب.

ملاحظات

- ✓ يمكن حذف (that) في أحد الجملتين أحيانًا.
- ✓ تأتي في بداية الجملة غالبًا.

4 In case (تحسبًا لـ)

تستخدم للتعبير عن احتمال حدوث شيء مستقبلاً واتخاذ إجراء احتياطي لتجنب المشكلة.

التركيب

In case + Present Simple , will + infinitive

(تحسبا لـ + مضارع بسيط ، سوف + فعل مجرد)

أمثلة

- Take an umbrella in case it rains.
  خذ مظلة تحسبا لمطر.
- I saved your number in case I need help.
  حفظت رقمك تحسبًا لأنني قد أحتاج للمساعدة.
- Lock the door in case a thief comes.
  أغلق الباب تحسبا لوجود لص.

ملاحظات

- ✓ لا تأتي لشرط مستمر بل لاحتمال وقوع حدث محدد.
- ✓ تأتي في بداية أو وسط الجملة.

5 (حتى لو – على الرغم من أن)

تستخدم للتعبير عن أن النتيجة ستحدث مهما كان الشرط، حتى لو كان مستحيلاً أو غير حقيقي.

التركيب

Even if + Past Simple , will + infinitive

(حتى لو + ماض بسيط ، سوف + فعل مجرد)

أمثلة

- Even if it rains, we will go to the match.
  حتى لو أمطر، ستذهب إلى المباراة.
- I will help you even if you don't ask me.
  سأساعدك حتى لو لم تطلب مني.
- Even if he is very busy, he always finds time for his family.
  حتى لو كان مشغولاً جداً، فهو دائماً يجد وقتاً لعائلته.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تستخدم (Even if) مع الماضي البسيط.
- ✓ تعطي معنى التأكيد على حدوث النتيجة.

نصائح ذهبية

- ✓ اقرأ الجملة جيداً وحدد نوع المعنى المطلوب (شرط – استثناء – احتمال)
- ✓ لا تخلط بين (unless) و(if not): الأولى تعني (if not)
- ✓ لا تستخدم (will) بعد (if) في الجملة الشرطية إذا كان الشرط غير حقيقي.
- ✓ احفظ الكلمات المفتاحية لكل أداة لتحديد معناها بسرعة:

Unless	: إذا لم	✓ (if not)
As long as	: طالما	✓ (while)
Provided (that)	: بشرط أن	✓ (on condition that)
In case	: تحسبًا لـ	✓ (so that / in order to)
Even if	: حتى لو	✓ (no matter what)

كلمات مفتاحية

Unless	if not – except if – otherwise	إذا لم – باستثناء إذا – وإلا
As long as	while – during – on condition that	طالما – أثناء – بشرط أن
Provided (that)	on condition that – if	بشرط أن – إذا
In case	so that – in order to – for fear that	تحسبًا لـ – لكي – خوفًا من أن
Even if	no matter what – although	حتى لو – مهما كان الأمر

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Unless you study hard, you _____ the exam.
   a) pass b) will pass c) are passing d) passed
2. You can use my laptop as long as you _____ it.
   a) return b) return c) will return d) are returning
3. You can go to the party provided (that) you _____ late.
   a) don't be b) won't be c) aren't d) not be
4. Take your medicine in case you _____ ill.
   a) get b) will get c) got d) have got
5. Even if he is tired, he _____ every day.
   a) exercises b) will exercise c) exercised d) is exercising

B Complete with: Unless – As long as – Provided (that) – In case – Even if

1. _____ you call me, I will help you.
2. I will take some water _____ I feel thirsty.
3. You can borrow my pen _____ you give it back.
4. _____ it rains, we will stay at home.
5. _____ you promise, I won't tell anyone.

C Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets:

1. If it doesn't rain, we will go to the park. (unless)
   _____
2. You can stay here on condition that you are quiet. (as long as)
   _____
3. We will leave early so that we don't miss the train. (in case)
   _____
4. He will help you even if you don't ask him. (provided that)
   _____
5. Even though he is old, he works hard. (even if)
   _____

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

Lesson 6

Wish – If only

التمني – لو أن

تستخدم (wish) و (if only) للتعبير عن التمني، الندم، التذمر أو الرغبة في تغيير شيء ما.
كلاهما لهما نفس المعنى تقريبًا، لكن (if only) تُستخدم عندما يكون الشعور أقوى وأكثر حزنًا أو ندماً.

Wish : أولًا

1. Wish + Past Simple

تمني في الحاضر (تغيير الحاضر)

نستخدمها عندما نريد تغيير شيء في الوقت الحاضر لأنه غير كما نرغب.

التركيب

wish + subject + past simple

أمثلة

- I wish I had more time.
  أتمنى لو كان لدي وقت أكثر.
- She wishes she lived near her school.
  تتمنى لو كانت تسكن قرب مدرستها.
- I wish it wasn't raining now.
  أتمنى لو لم يكن يمطر الآن.
- They wish they understood the lesson.
  يتمنون لو أنهم يفهمون الدرس.

2. Wish + Past Perfect

تمني عن الماضي (الندم)

نستخدمها عندما نتمنى أن شيئًا ما لم يحدث في الماضي.

التركيب

wish + subject + had + P.P

أمثلة

- I wish I had studied harder.
  أتمنى لو أنني درست بجد أكثر.
- She wishes she had listened to her parents.
  تتمنى لو أنها استمعت لوالديها.
- I wish we had left earlier.
  أتمنى لو أننا غادرنا مبكرًا.
- They wish they had taken the medicine.
  يتمنون لو أنهم أخذوا الدواء.

3. Wish + would (base form)

تمني في المستقبل (تذمر أو رغبة)

نستخدمها للتعبير عن عدم الرضا عن شيء في المستقبل أو للتمني بأن يكون مختلفا.

التركيب

wish + subject + would + base

أمثلة

- I wish people would stop littering.
  أتمنى لو أن الناس تتوقف عن إلقاء القمامة.
- She wishes he would phone her.
  تتمنى لو أنه يتصل بها.
- I wish you would be more careful.
  أتمنى لو أنك تكون أكثر حذرًا.
- They wish it would stop snowing.
  يتمنون لو أن الثلج يتوقف.

If only : ثانيا:

تستخدم (If only) بنفس استخدام (wish) و للتعبير عن شعور أقوى بالندم أو التمني.

1. If only + Past Simple

تمني في الحاضر

التركيب

if only + subject + past simple

أمثلة

- If only I had more free time!
  لو أنني فقط لدي وقت فراغ أكثر!
- If only it wasn't so hot today!
  لو أن الطقس ليس حارًا جدًا اليوم!
- If only he was here now!
  لو أنه فقط كان هنا الآن!

2. If only + Past Perfect

تمني عن الماضي (ندم)

التركيب

if only + subject + had + P.P

أمثلة

- If only I had known the answer.
  لو أنني فقط كنت أعرف الإجابة.
- If only she had taken my advice.
  لو أنها فقط كانت أخذت نصيحتي.
- If only we had started earlier.
  لو أننا فقط بدأنا في وقت أبكر.

3. If only + would (base form)

تمني في المستقبل (تذمر)

التركيب

if only + subject + would + base

أمثلة

- If only people would be more honest!
  لو أن الناس فقط كانوا أكثر صدقًا!
- If only it would stop raining.
  لو أن المطر فقط يتوقف.
- If only you would listen to me!
  لو أنك فقط تستمع إليّ!

مقارنة بين Wish و If only

وجه المقارنة	Wish	If only
المعنى	تمني / ندم / تذمر	تمني أقوى – ندم شديد
شدة الشعور	عادي	أقوى وأكثر حزنًا
الاستخدام في الكلام	شائع في الحديث اليومي	أكثر في الكتابة والأدب
مثال (حاضر)	I wish I were taller.	If only I were taller!
مثال (ماضي)	I wish I had studied.	If only I had studied!

ملاحظات مهمة

- ✓ تستخدم (were) بعد (I) في كل الحالات.
  - I wish I were / If only I were.
- ✓ (not) يتبعها لا (wish / if only).
- ✓ الفعل بعد (would) يكون دائما في المصدر بدون to.
  - I wish they would help me. ✓ (not to help)
- ✓ إذا كان الفاعل في الماضي : I wish they had... / If only they had...

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I wish I _____ more money.
   a) have b) had c) having d) has
2. If only they _____ the truth.
   a) knew b) know c) known d) knowing
3. She wishes she _____ in a big house.
   a) live b) lived c) living d) lives
4. I wish he _____ so late every day.
   a) doesn't stay b) didn't stay c) not stay d) won't stay
5. If only I _____ harder for the exam.
   a) study b) studied c) had studied d) studying
6. They wish it _____ stop snowing.
   a) will b) would c) won't d) to
7. I wish my English _____ better.
   a) is b) were c) was d) be
8. If only she _____ angry with me.
   a) isn't b) wasn't c) hasn't been d) not be

B Rewrite using (wish):

1. I don't have a car.
   → I wish _____
2. He is very busy.
   → He wishes _____
3. We left home late.
   → I wish _____
4. You don't listen to me.
   → I wish _____
5. She can't speak French.
   → She wishes _____
6. They didn't help me.
   → I wish _____

C Rewrite using (if only):

1. I wasn't at home yesterday.
   → If only _____
2. He doesn't like studying.
   → If only _____
3. We didn't see the movie.
   → If only _____
4. It isn't working now.
   → If only _____
5. I don't know the password.
   → If only _____
6. She is not here now.
   → If only _____

Exam Tips

- ✖ تحدد زمن الجملة أولًا. (حاضر – ماض – مستقبل).
- ✖ اختر التركيب الصحيح لـ (wish / if only).
- ✖ احذر نسيان (had) في الماضي.
- ✖ تذكر: (if only)= شعور أقوى بالندم أو التمني.

Common Mistakes

- I wish I am tall. ✖
- I wish he to come. ✖
- I wish he would come. ✓
- If only I had went. ✖
- If only I had gone. ✓

Golden Note

كلما زاد اهتمامك باللغة الإنجليزية،
زاد تعبيرك عن مشاعرك وأمنياتك.
لا تتمنى مستحيلاً..
بل اعمل ليتحقق!

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

Lesson 7 I'd rather – It's time – Had better

التفضيل – الوقت المناسب – من الأفضل أن

تستخدم هذه التراكيب للتعبير عن التفضيل والنصيحة والوقت المناسب لعمل شيء ما.

1 I'd rather أودّ / أفضل

تُستخدم للتعبير عن التفضيل بين أمرين.

I'd rather + (infinitive)
أو
I'd rather + (subject) + Past Simple

أمثلة

- **I'd rather stay home.**
  أفضل أن أبقى في المنزل.
- **I'd rather you didn't smoke.**
  أفضل ألا تدخن.
- **I'd rather we went by train.**
  أفضل أن نذهب بالقطار.

لاحظ

- I prefer / I'd prefer تعني نفس المعنى.
- تستخدم (did) في النفي حتى جميع الضمائر.

2 It's time حان الوقت

تُستخدم للتعبير عن الوقت المناسب لعمل شيء ما.

It's time + Past Simple

أمثلة

- **It's time to go to bed.**
  حان الوقت للنوم.
- **It's time you studied hard.**
  حان الوقت لتذاكر بجد.
- **It's time we left.**
  حان الوقت لنغادر.

لاحظ

- بعد (It's time) نستخدم الفعل في الماضي البسيط حتى إذا كان المعنى في الحاضر أو المستقبل.
- يمكن استخدام الضمائر بعد (It's time):
  you / we / they

3 Had better من الأفضل أن

تُستخدم للتعبير عن النصح أو التحذير القوي.

Had better + infinitive
(من الأفضل أن + فعل مجرد)

أمثلة

- **You had better study hard.**
  من الأفضل أن تذاكر بجد.
- **She had better see a doctor.**
  من الأفضل أن تراجع طبيبًا.
- **We had better leave now.**
  من الأفضل أن نغادر الآن.

لاحظ

- معناها = يجب أن / من الأفضل أن / لتفعل.
- نستخدمها في النصائح والتحذيرات القوية.

مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب الثلاثة

التعبير	المعنى	الاستخدام	التركيب	مثال
I'd rather	أفضل / أودّ أن	للتفضيل بين أمرين	I'd rather + (infinitive) / subject + past	I'd rather read a book.
It's time	حان الوقت لـ ...	للتعبير عن الوقت المناسب لعمل شيء	It's time + Past Simple	It's time to study.
Had better	من الأفضل أن / يجب أن	للنصيحة أو التحذير القوي	Had better + infinitive	You had better hurry.

أمثلة إضافية

- I'd rather you helped me. أفضل أن تساعدني.
- I'd rather they didn't make noise. أفضل أن لا يصدروا ضوضاء.
- It's time to take a break. حان الوقت لأخذ استراحة.
- It's time you went to school. حان الوقت لتذهب إلى المدرسة.
- It's time we started our lesson. حان الوقت لنبدأ درسنا.
- You had better wear a coat. It's cold. من الأفضل أن ترتدي معطفًا. الجو بارد.
- He had better not be late. من الأفضل ألا يتأخر.
- They had better revise. من الأفضل أن يراجعوا جيدًا.

ملاحظات مهمة

1. تُستخدم (did) لتحديد الماضي في I'd rather + past: لجميع الضمائر.
2. It's time + past simple: تتغير رغم تغيرن.
3. Had: من الأفضل ان ؛صلي نصيحة قوية أو تحذير.
4. يمكن أن تأتي الجملة مع (or) في I'd rather للمقارنة بين خيارين.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I'd rather _____ at home.
   a) stay b) staying c) stayed d) stays
2. I'd rather you _____ late.
   a) aren't b) not be c) didn't be d) don't be
3. It's time _____ to school.
   a) go b) went c) going d) goes
4. It's time we _____ our homework.
   a) do b) did c) doing d) does
5. You had better _____ smoke.
   a) not b) no c) don't d) didn't
6. She had better _____ a doctor.
   a) see b) sees c) seeing d) saw

B Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets:

1. I prefer to read novels. (I'd rather)
   _____
2. It's time to eat lunch. (It's time)
   _____
3. You should take a rest. (You had better)
   _____
4. I don't want to go out. (I'd rather)
   _____
5. We must start now. (It's time)
   _____
6. He should not be noisy. (He had better)
   _____

C Complete the sentences:

1. I'd rather _____ by train than by bus.
2. It's time _____ bed.
3. You had better _____ fast.
4. I'd rather you _____ my pen.
5. It's time we _____ our project.
6. She had better _____ her English.

Common Mistakes ✗

✗	✓
I'd rather you not to smoke.	I'd rather you didn't smoke.
It's time for go.	It's time to go.
He had better not be late.	He had better not be late.

Exam Tip

ابحث دائمًا عن معنى الجملة:

- هل تتحدث عن تفضيل؟ استخدم I'd rather.
- هل تتحدث عن الوقت المناسب؟ استخدم It's time.
- هل تتحدث عن نصيحة أو تحذير؟ استخدم Had better.

Golden Note

التفضيل = I'd rather
الوقت المناسب = It's time
النصيحة القوية = Had better

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

للصف الثالث الثانوي 2026 / 2027

Lesson 8 Common Mistakes – Exam Tips – Golden Notes

أخطاء شائعة – نصائح للامتحان – ملاحظات ذهبية

1 أخطاء شائعة (Common Mistakes)

1. في First Conditional استخدام will مع if / when / unless / as long as / in case.
   ✗ Wrong: If it rains, we will stay home.
   ✓ Correct: If it rains, we will stay home.
2. في Second Conditional استخدام were مع I / he / she / it بدل was.
   ✗ Wrong: If I was you, I would go.
   ✓ Correct: If I were you, I would go.
3. Third Conditional يعبر عن ندم على الماضي.
   ✗ Wrong: If he studied, he would have passed.
   ✓ Correct: If he had studied, he would have passed.
4. الخلط بين Second و Third Conditional.
   ✗ Wrong: If I had enough money, I would buy a car. (هذه تعبر عن الحالي).
   ✓ Correct: If I had enough money, I would buy a car.
   أو) If I had had enough money, I would have bought a car.)
5. would في Zero Conditional استخدام.
   ✗ Wrong: If you heat ice, it would melt.
   ✓ Correct: If you heat ice, it melts.
6. had better / would rather / prefer : نسيان "to" في التعبيرات.
   ✗ Wrong: You had better study hard.
   ✗ Wrong: I would rather stay at home.
   ✗ Wrong: I prefer read books.
   ✓ Correct: You had better study hard.
   ✓ Correct: I would rather stay at home.
   ✓ Correct: I prefer to read books.
7. الخلط بين if only و wish.
   ✗ Wrong: I wish if only I could fly.
   ✓ Correct: I wish I could fly.
   ✓ Correct: If only I could fly!
8. استخدام were بدل was في Second Conditional في جميع الضمائر.
   ✗ Wrong: If they was rich, they would travel.
   ✓ Correct: If they were rich, they would travel.
9. Provided تسيان مع في اللغة الرسمية.
   ✗ Wrong: Provided you study hard, you will pass.
   ✓ Correct: Provided (that) you study hard, you will pass.
10. استخدام في جملة الشرط الثالث بدل من Second Conditional.
    ✗ Wrong: If I were you, I will not worry.
    ✓ Correct: If I were you, I would not worry.

2 نصائح للامتحان (Exam Tips)

1 حدد نوع الشرط من معني الجملة:

هل الحديث عن حقيقة؟ ← Zero.
احتمال حقيقي؟ ← First.
موقف خيالي الآن؟ ← Second
ندم في الماضي؟ ← Third

2 ابحث عن الكلمات المفتاحية:

If – when – unless – as long as – in case – even if – wish – if only – had better – ought to

3 في أسئلة الاختيار، إقرأ الجملة كاملة قبل اختيار الإجابة.

غالباً الخطأ يكون في جزء من الجملة وليس كلها.

4 في أسئلة إعادة الصياغة: (Rewrite):

اتنبه جيداً للكلمة المفتاحية التي يجب أن تبقى ثابتة.
اتبع قواعد كل تركيب بدقة.

5 فرق بين if only و wish :

إثنان يعبران عن الندم أو الرغبة، لكن
ناسا تعبر عن شعور أقوى من wish .

6 لاحظ زمن الجملة الثانية:

will → First Conditional
would → Second Conditional
would have → Third Conditional

7 في الأسئلة المقالية:

استخدم الأمثلة من حياتك أو من حولك لكتابة جمل صحيحة.
اكتب جمل شرطية متنوعة لإظهار فهمك.

8 راجع الأخطاء الشائعة دائماً قبل الامتحان

حتى لا تفقد درجات سهلة.

3 مقارنة سريعة بين التركيبات المهمة

التركيب	الاستخدام	المثال	ملاحظة
Zero Conditional	حقائق علمية وعادات ثابتة	If you heat water, it boils.	Present Simple + Present Simple
First Conditional	احتمال حقيقي في المستقبل	If I study hard, I will pass.	Present Simple + will
Second Conditional	موقف خيالي في الحاضر / المضارع	If I were rich, I would travel.	Past Simple + would
Third Conditional	ندم على الماضي	If I had studied, I would have passed.	Past Perfect + would have
Wish (Past)	تمني في الحاضر	I wish I were taller.	Past Simple
If only (Past)	ندم في الماضي	If only I had studied.	Past Perfect
Had better	نصيحة أو تحذير قوي	You had better hurry.	Had better + inf.
It's time	الوقت مناسب لعمل شيء	It's time to go.	It's time + Past Simple
I'd rather	تفضيل	I'd rather stay home.	would rather + inf.

4 ملاحظات ذهبية (Golden Notes)

- ✓ كل نوع من الشرط يعبر عن فكرة مختلفة، لذلك يجب اختيار الزمن الصحيح في كلا الشرطين.
- ✓ اللغة الإنجليزية تعتمد على المنطق؛ افهم المعنى أولاً ثم اختر التراكيب اللازمة.
- ✓ تدرب كثيراً على الجمل الشرطية لأنها تأتي في جميع أجزاء الامتحان (اختيار من متعدد – إعادة صياغة – مقالي).
- ✓ استخدم تراكيب متنوعة في الكتابة لتظهر لمصحح الامتحان مستواك العالي.
- ✓ النجاح في قواعد الشرط يعني أنك تفهم كيف تتحدث عن المستقبل والماضي بوضوح.

تدريب (Check Yourself)

A Choose the correct answer:

1. If I _____ more time, I would help you.
   a) had b) have c) am having d) have had
2. If the phone hadn't rung, we _____ the news.
   a) didn't hear b) wouldn't hear c) haven't heard d) won't hear
3. You had better _____ your homework.
   a) doing b) do c) did d) to do
4. I wish I _____ an engineer.
   a) am b) was c) will be d) would be
5. If only I _____ more confident.
   a) am b) was c) were d) be

B Correct the mistakes:

1. If I was you, I will go.
2. If he had money, he will buy a car.
3. Unless you to study hard, you will pass.
4. I wish if only I was taller.
5. You had better to be late.

A Make sentences using the words:

1. (If – rain – we – stay – home.)
2. (If only – I – have – more – time.)
3. (You – had better – go – now.)
4. (It's time – have – lunch.)

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

Lesson 9

So – Such – (Too) ... To – Enough

كنتيجة لذلك – جداً (للتأكيد) – (جدا) ... لدرجة أن – يكفي

تُستخدم هذه التراكيب للتعبير عن النتيجة – للتأكيد على الصفة – للتعبير عن شدة الشيء – للتعبير عن حذ لشيء ما.

1 So (+ فاعل + مساعد + فعل) كنتيجة لذلك

Subject + was / were / is / are / do / does / did + so

نستخدم So لذكر نتيجة جملة سابقة.

أمثلة

- **It rained heavily, so we stayed at home.**
  مطر بشدة، كنتيجة لذلك بقينا في المنزل.
- **She was very tired, so she went to bed early.**
  كانت متعبة جداً، كنتيجة لذلك ذهبت للنوم مبكراً.

ملاحظات

- ✔ تأتي So بعد الفاصلة (,).
- ✔ نكتب So بدون فاصلة علنها.

2 Such + (a / an) + صفة + اسم (للتأكيد على صفة) جداً

Such + (a / an) + adjective + noun

نستخدمها قبل الاسم لتأكيد أن الصفة قوية جداً.

- **It was such a beautiful day!**
  كان يوماً جميلاً جداً!
- **She is such a kind girl.**
  إنها فتاة لطيفة جداً.

ملاحظات

- ✔ تستخدم (a / an) مع الاسم المفرد.
- ✔ تستخدم (such) مع جمع قبل وغير قابل للعد.

3 (Too) ... To + فعل (جداً) ... لدرجة أن

(Too) + adjective / adverb + to + base verb

تستخدمها للتعبير عن الحد اللازم لحدوث الفعل.

أمثلة

- **The box is too heavy to carry.**
  الصندوق ثقيل جداً لدرجة أنني لا أستطيع حمله.
- **He is too young to drive.**
  هو صغير جداً لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع القيادة.
- **She speaks too fast to understand.**
  تتحدث بسرعة جداً لدرجة أنني لا أستطيع الفهم.

ملاحظات

- ✔ نستخدم (too) في المعنى الرسمي.
- ✔ نستخدم (very) بدلاً منها في الكلام اليومي.

4 (So) + حالة / أثر that بحيث أن

(So) + adjective / adverb + that + clause

تستخدمها لتوضح النتيجة.

- **He is so kind that everyone loves him.**
  هو لطيف جداً بحيث أن الجميع يحبه.
- **It was so cold that we stayed inside.**
  كان الجو بارداً جدا بحيث أننا بقينا في الداخل.

ملاحظات

- ✔ تأتي (so) قبل الصفة أو الحال.
- ✔ تأتي (that) لربط النتيجة.

5 ... + enough + (to) يكفي لـ

(Adjective / Noun) + enough + (to + base verb)

تستخدمها لمعني (يكفي لـ).

- **I'm old enough to vote.**
  أنا أكبر سناً بما يكفي للتصويت.
- **She is strong enough to lift it.**
  هي قوية بما يكفي لرفعها.
- **We have enough time to finish.**
  لدينا وقت كافٍ لإنهاء العمل.

ملاحظات

- ✔ بعد (enough) نستخدم (فعل فعل).
- ✔ يمكن استخدام (enough) بعد الاسم.

مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب

التعبير	المعنى	التركيب	مثال
So	كنتيجة لذلك	Subject + was / were / is / are / do / does / did + so	It rained, so we stayed.
Such	جداً (قبل اسم)	Such + (a / an) + adjective + noun	It was such a happy day.
(Too) ... To	(جداً) ... لدرجة أن	(Too) + adjective / adverb + to + base verb	Too old to climb.
So ... that	بحيث أن (نتيجة قوية)	(So) + adjective / adverb + that + clause	So fast that I can't follow.
enough (to)	يكفي لـ	(Adjective / Noun) + enough + (to + base verb)	Tall enough to reach.

ملاحظات مهمة

- ✔ تستخدم لنتيجة جملة سابقة.
- ✔ تستخدم قبل الاسم للتأكيد على الصفة.
- ✔ To ... (Too) تعبر عن أكثر من الحد اللازم.
- ✔ So ... that تعبر عن نتيجة قوية جداً.
- ✔ enough (to) تعبر عن الكفاية أو الحد المناسب.

أخطاء شائعة

- ✘ I was so tired, so I went to bed. ✘
  I was so tired that I went to bed.
- ✘ He is very tall enough to play. ✘
  He is tall enough to play.
- ✘ The box is very heavy to carry. ✘
  The box is too heavy to carry.

أمثلة إضافية

- **She studied hard, so she passed.**
  درست بجد، كنتيجة لذلك نجحت.
- **Such noise! I can't study.**
  ضجيج جداً! لا أستطيع الدراسة.
- **He is too busy to help you.**
  هو مشغول جداً لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع مساعدتك.
- **The movie was so interesting that we watched it twice.**
  كان الفيلم مثيراً جداً بحيث أننا شاهدناه مرتين.
- **This problem is difficult enough to solve.**
  هذه المشكلة صعبة بما يكفي لحلها.
- **It was foggy, so the plane was delayed.**
  كان الجو ضبابياً، فنتيجة لذلك تأخر الطائرة.
- **She is such a good teacher.**
  إنها معلمة جيدة جداً.
- **The bag is too heavy to carry.**
  الحقيبة ثقيلة جداً لدرجة أنني لا أستطيع حملها.
- **He is so smart that he always gets full marks.**
  هو ذكي جداً بحيث أنه يحصل دائماً على الدرجة النهائية.
- **We have enough money to buy a new car.**
  لدينا مال كافٍ لشراء سيارة جديدة.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. It was raining heavily, _____ we stayed at home.
   a) but b) so c) because d) and
2. It was _____ a lovely day!
   a) so b) such c) very d) too
3. The boy is _____ young to ride a bike.
   a) so b) too c) such d) enough
4. She is _____ kind _____ everyone likes her.
   a) so – that b) such – that c) too – to d) enough – to
5. He is tall _____ reach the top shelf.
   a) so b) enough to c) too d) such
6. The weather was bad, _____ the match was cancelled.
   a) so b) but c) and d) because

B Rewrite using the correct form:

1. The box is heavy. I can't carry it. (too)
   _____
2. She sings beautiful. Everyone loves her. (so ... that)
   _____
3. The day was nice. We went to the beach. (so)
   _____
4. This book is interesting. I read it in one day. (such)
   _____
5. You are tall. You can play basketball. (enough)
   _____
6. He is busy. He can't come now. (too)
   _____

C Complete the sentences:

1. It was a wonderful meal. It was _____ delicious!
2. The baby is _____ small to walk.
3. It is _____ cold today that we stayed inside.
4. We have _____ time to finish the homework.
5. She studied hard, _____ she got high marks.
6. The suitcase is _____ heavy to lift.

Exam Tip ★

- ★ انتبه للفروق بين (to ... too) و (so ... that).
- ★ لستخدم (enough + to) للتعبير عن الحد المناسب.
- ★ اقرأ الجملة جيداً لتحدد المعنى المطلوب.

Golden Note

- So = نتيجة
- Such = للتأكيد على
- (Too) ... To = أكثر من الحد
- So ... that = نتيجة قوية
- enough (to) = يكفي لـ

Remember

- So → نتيجة
- Such → جداً و قبل
- (Too) ... To → لدرجة أن
- So ... that → بحيث أن
- enough (to) → يكفي لـ

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

للصف الثالث الثانوي
2026 / 2027

Lesson 10 Unless – As long as – In case – Provided (that)
ما لم – طالما أن – في حالة أن – بشرط أن

تستخدم هذه التراكيب للتعبير عن الشرط غير الحقيقي أو الاحتياط أو الاتفاق بين أمرين.

1 Unless (ما لم)

تستخدم للتعبير عن شرط سلبي.

Unless + Present Simple , will + base verb
(= If ... not , will ...)

أمثلة

- **Unless you study, you will fail.**
  ما لم تدرس، سوف تفشل.
- **Unless it rains, we will go out.**
  ما لم تمطر، سنخرج.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تأتي جملة الشرط أولاً.
- ✓ يمكن وضع الفاصلة بعد unless.

2 As long as (طالما أن)

تستخدم للتعبير عن شرط إيجابي مستمر.

As long as + Present Simple , will + base verb
(= If ... , will ...)

أمثلة

- **As long as you work hard, you will succeed.**
  طالماً أنك تعمل بجد، ستنجح.
- **As long as it is fine, we will have a picnic.**
  طالماً أن الجو جميل، سنقيم نزهة.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تأتي جملة الشرط أولاً.
- ✓ تعبر عن استمرار الشرط.

3 In case (في حالة أن)

تستخدم للتعبير عن شرط احتياطي.

In case + Present Simple , will + base verb
(= If ... , will ...)

أمثلة

- **Take an umbrella in case it rains.**
  خذ مظلة في حالة أن تمطر.
- **Save your work in case the computer crashes.**
  احفظ عملك في حالة أن يتعطل الكمبيوتر.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تأتي جملة الشرط بعد in case.
- ✓ تستخدم للتحذير أو الاحتياط.

4 Provided (that) (بشرط أن)

تستخدم للتعبير عن اتفاق بين شرط ونتيجة.

Provided (that) + Present Simple , will + base verb
(= If ... , will ...)

أمثلة

- **Provided (that) you come early, we will start on time.**
  بشرط أن تأتي مبكراً، ستبدأ في الوقت المحدد.
- **Provided that you follow the rules, you will be safe.**
  بشرط أن تتبع القواعد، ستكون آمناً.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تأتي جملة الشرط أولاً.
- ✓ (that) يمكن حذفه في الكلام.

مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب

التعبير	المعنى	ترتيب الجملة الشرطية	نوع الشرط	الاستخدام
Unless	ما لم	تأتي أولاً	سلبي (غير حقيقي)	التحذير والتتائج السلبية
As long as	طالما أن	تأتي أولاً	إيجابي (غير حقيقي)	الاستمرار والشرط الإيجابي
In case	في حالة أن	تأتي بعد in case	احتياطي (قد يحدث)	الاحتياط والتحذير
Provided (that)	بشرط أن	تأتي أولاً	اتفاق بين شرط ونتيجة	الاتفاق والامتثال لشروط

ملاحظات مهمة

- ✓ جميع هذه التراكيب تعبر عن شرط غير حقيقي في المستقبل.
- ✓ بستخدم الفعل المضارع البسيط في جملة الشرط.
- ✓ نتيجة الشرط تكون في المستقبل باستخدام will.
- ✓ In case تأتي جملة الشرط بعد العبارة.
- ✓ نسئلة Provided (that) تعبر عن اتفاق مشروط.

أمثلة إضافية

- **Unless he apologizes, I won't forgive him.** ما لم يعتذر، لن أسامحه.
- **As long as you eat healthy food, you will be fit.** طالما أنك تأكل طعامًا صحيًا، صحيتا.
- **In case you don't understand, ask your teacher.** في حالة أن لا تفهم، اسأل معلمك.
- **Provided (that) you are serious, I will help you.** بشرط أن تكون جادًا، سأساعدك.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Unless you hurry up, we _____ the bus.
   a) miss b) will miss c) missed d) missing
2. _____ you study well, you will pass the exam.
   a) As long as b) In case c) Unless d) Provided
3. Keep the medicine in the fridge _____ it spoils.
   a) as long as b) unless c) in case d) provided
4. _____ he comes early, we will wait for him.
   a) Unless b) As long as c) Provided d) In case
5. _____ you follow the instructions, you will be safe.
   a) In case b) Unless c) As long as d) Provided
6. Take your phone _____ you need to call me.
   a) as long as b) unless c) in case d) provided

B Rewrite using the word in brackets:

1. I will help you if you need me. (in case)
   _____
2. Don't go out if it rains. (unless)
   _____
3. You will succeed if you work hard. (as long as)
   _____
4. I will lend you my car if you are careful. (provided that)
   _____
5. Don't forget your keys if you leave. (in case)
   _____
6. You will fail if you don't study. (unless)
   _____

C Complete the sentences:

1. Unless we save water, we _____ in the future.
2. As long as you try your best, _____ be proud of you.
3. Put on a coat _____ it's cold.
4. We will start the meeting on time _____ everyone arrives.
5. _____ you bring your book, I'll lend you mine.
6. _____ you don't understand, ask me.

Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- × Unless it rains, we will stay at home. (✓ Unless it rains, ...)
- × In case it will rain, take an umbrella. (✓ In case it rains, ...)
- × Provided that he will come, ... (✓ Provided (that) he comes, ...)
- × As long as he is late, ... (✓ Unless he is late, ...)

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ★ اقرأ جملة الشرط جيداً للتحدد نوع العلاقة.
- ★ انتبه لمكان الفاصلة ووجود in case او لا.
- ★ استخدم الفعل الصحيح في الجملة الرئيسية (will).

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

الشرط الصحيح يقود إلى نتيجة صحيحة.
افهم العلاقة بين الجمل
لاختيار التركيب المناسب دائماً.

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

للصف الثالث الإعدادي
2026 / 2027

Lesson 11 So that – In order to – In order that
لكي – من أجل أن – حتى

تُستخدم هذه التراكيب للتعبير عن الهدف (الغرض) من فعل ما.

1 So that (لكي)

تستخدم للتعبير عن الهدف أو النتيجة المتوقعة.

Subject + Verb + so that + subject + can / could / will + base verb

أمثلة

- I study hard so that I can pass the exam.
  أدرس بجد لكي أستطيع أن أنجح في الامتحان.
- She saves money so that she can buy a new phone.
  إنها توفر المال لكي تستطيع أن تشتري هاتفاً جديداً.
- He leaves early so that he can arrive on time.
  يغادر مبكراً لكي يستطيع الوصول في الوقت المحدد.
- We turn off the lights so that we can save electricity.
  نطفئ الأنوار لكي نستطيع توفير الكهرباء.

ملاحظات

- ✓ يعـد so that تستخدم + can / could / will + الفعل.
- ✓ يمكن حذف can إذا كان المعنى واضحاً في بعض الأحيان.

2 In order to (من أجل أن)

تستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض (النية) من فعل ما.

Subject + Verb + in order to + base verb

أمثلة

- I go to the gym every day in order to keep fit.
  أذهب إلى النادي كل يوم من أجل أن أحافظ على لياقتي.
- He works hard in order to achieve his dreams.
  يعمل بجد من أجل أن يحقق أحلامه.
- We study English in order to improve our skills.
  ندرس الإنجليزية من أجل أن نحسن مهاراتنا.
- They practice daily in order to win the match.
  يتدربون يومياً من أجل أن يفوزوا في المباراة.

ملاحظات

- ✓ in order to يتبعها المصدر (الفعل الأساسي) فقط.
- ✓ تعبر عن النية أو التخطيط للقيام بشيء.

3 In order that (حتى / لكي)

تستخدم لطلب أو تأكيد الهدف من أجل شخص آخر.

Subject + Verb + in order that + subject + may / can + base verb

أمثلة

- I speak loudly in order that everyone may hear me.
  أتحدث بصوت عالٍ حتى يسمعني الجميع.
- He locked the door in order that nobody could enter.
  أغلق الباب حتى لا يتمكن أحد من الدخول.
- We hurry in order that we may catch the bus.
  نسرع حتى نُلحق الحافلة.
- She studies well in order that she can get high marks.
  تدرس جيداً حتى تستطيع الحصول على درجات عالية.

ملاحظات

- ✓ in order that تأتي قبل جملة تحتوي على may / can.
- ✓ تستخدم أكثر في الطلبات أو التمنيات.

مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب الثلاثة

التركيب	المعنى	الشكل	يستخدم مع	مثال
So that	للتعبير عن الهدف أو النتيجة المتوقعة	so that + can / could / will + الفعل	الفاعل الذي قام بالفعل	I study so that I can pass.
In order to	للتعبير عن الغرض أو النية	in order to + الفعل الأساسي	الفاعل الذي قام بالفعل	I study in order to pass.
In order that	للطلب أو للتمني أو التأكيد	in order that + may / can + الفعل	شخص آخر غير الفاعل	I study in order that I may pass.

ملاحظات مهمة

- ✓ so that تعبر عن النتيجة المتوقعة.
- ✓ in order to تعبر عن النية أو الهدف الشخصي.
- ✓ in order that تعبر عن الغرض لشخص آخر (طلب أو تمنى).
- ✓ بعد so that نستخدم + can / could / will + الفعل.
- ✓ بعد in order to نستخدم الفعل الأساسي فقط.
- ✓ بعد in order that نستخدم + may / can + الفعل.

أمثلة إضافية

- I eat healthy food so that I can stay strong.
  آكل طعاماً صحياً لكي أستطيع أن أبقى قوياً.
- He gets up early in order to pray. يستيقظ مبـكراً من أجل أن يصلي.
- They plant trees so that we can have clean air. يزرعون الأشجار لكي يكون لدينا هواء نقي.
- We keep silent in order that we may not disturb others.
  نظل صامتين حتى لا نز عج الآخرين.
- She trains every day in order to be a champion.
  تتدرب كل يوم من أجل أن تصبح بطلة.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I study hard _____ I can get good marks.
   a) so that b) in order to c) in order that d) because
2. He wakes up early _____ catch the bus.
   a) so that b) in order to c) in order that d) but
3. She speaks clearly _____ everyone may understand.
   a) so that b) in order to c) in order that d) because
4. They save money _____ buy a new car.
   a) so that b) in order to c) in order that d) although
5. We must hurry _____ we may not miss the train.
   a) so that b) in order to c) in order that d) but
6. He wears warm clothes _____ he doesn't get cold.
   a) so that b) in order to c) in order that d) because

B Rewrite using the word in brackets:

1. I exercise daily. I want to keep fit. (in order to)
   _____
2. She studies well. She can pass the exam. (so that)
   _____
3. He left early. He could arrive on time. (so that)
   _____
4. I locked the door. Nobody could enter. (in order that)
   _____
5. They learn English. They can find a good job. (in order to)
   _____
6. We save water. We can protect the earth. (so that)
   _____

C Complete the sentences:

1. I work hard _____ achieve my dreams.
2. They study English _____ improve their skills.
3. Please be quiet _____ the baby can sleep.
4. We plant trees _____ the air may be clean.
5. She eats vegetables _____ stay healthy.
6. He turns off the TV _____ save electricity.

Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ I study hard in order that I can pass. (تصحيح: so that)
- ✗ He wants to win in order that. (الصحيح: in order)
- ✗ We are here so that to help you. (الصحيح: so that)
- ✗ I speak loudly in order to that everyone hear me.
  (الصحيح: in order that)

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

اسأل نفسك دائماً: ماذا أريد أن يحدث؟

- → إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن نتيجة متوقعة → استخدم so that
- → إذا كانت تعبر عن غرضي الشخصي → استخدم in order to
- → إذا كانت تعبر عن غرض لشخص آخر → استخدم in order that

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

so that + الفعل + can / could / will

in order to + الفعل الأساسي

in order that + may / can + الفعل

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

للصف الثالث الإعدادي
2026 / 2027

Lesson 12

So / Neither – Either – Both

الموافقة – النفي والموافقة – الاختيار

تستخدم هذه التراكيب للتعبير عن الموافقة أو الإتفاق ، والنفي مع الإتفاق، وتقديم اختيار بين اثنين.

1 So (الموافقة)

نستخدم (so) للتعبير عن أن ما قيل في الجملة الأولى، أيضاً على الفاعل في الجملة الثانية.

So + be / have / do + subject

أمثلة

- I am tired. — أنا متعب.
  So am I. — وأنا أيضاً.
- She can swim. — هي تستطيع السباحة.
  So can I. — وأنا أيضاً أستطيع.
- They like pizza. — هم يحبون البيتزا.
  So do we. — ونحن أيضاً.

ملاحظات

- ✓ بعد (so) نستخدم الفعل المساعد مثل الجملة الأولى.
- ✓ إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي في المضارع البسيط، السنخدم نستخدم do / does.

2 Neither ... nor (النفي والموافقة)

تستخدم (neither ... nor) للتعبير عن النفي للجملة الأولى، والموافقة في الثانية.

Neither + be / have / do + subject
nor + be / have / do + subject

أمثلة

- I don't like coffee. — أنا لا أحب القهوة.
  Neither do I. — وأنا أيضاً لا أحب.
- He hasn't finished his homework.
  Neither have I. — هو لم ينتهِ من واجبه.
  وأنا أيضاً لم أنتهِ.
- They won't come. — لن يأتوا.
  Neither will we. — ونحن أيضاً لن نأتي.

ملاحظات

- ✓ نستخدم نفس الفعل المساعد بعد (neither) وبعد (nor).
- ✓ تستخدم للإتفاق على معنى الجملة المنفية.

3 Either ... or (اختيار بين إثنين)

تستخدم (either ... or) لتقديم اختيار بين شيئين أو شخصين.

Either + subject + base verb + or + subject + base verb

أمثلة

- Either you call me or I call you.
  إما أن تتصل بي أو سأتصل بك.
- You can have tea or coffee.
  يمكنك تناول شاي أو قهوة.
- Either Ali or his brother is coming.
  إما علي أو أخوه قادم.

ملاحظات

- ✓ يمكن عكس ترتيب الجملة: إما ... أو ...
- ✓ الفعل يأتي في صورة المصدر بدون to.

مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب الثلاثة

التركيب	المعنى	الشكل	الاستخدام	مثال
So	الموافقة	So + be / have / do + subject	للتعبير عن أن ما في الجملة الأولى صحيح أيضا فلميل للثانية	I like football. So do I.
Neither ... nor	النفي والموافقة	Neither + ... nor + ...	لنفي الجملة الأولى والموافقة في الثانية	He isn't coming. Neither am I.
Either ... or	اختيار بين إثنين	Either + ... or + ...	لتقديم اختيار بين شيئين	Either come now or wait.

أمثلة إضافية

- He plays the piano. — So does his sister. — هو يعزف البيانو. وأخته أيضاً.
- We can't go hiking today. — Neither can they. — لا نستطيع الذهاب في نزهة اليوم. ولا هم أيضاً.
- You can keep the book. — Either read it or return it. — يمكنك الاحتفاظ بالكتاب. إما أن تقرأه أو تعيده.
- I haven't seen this movie. — Neither has my friend. — لم أشاهد هذا الفيلم. ولا صديقي أيضاً.

ملاحظات مهمة

- ★ (so) تعبر عن الموافقة أو الإتفاق.
- ★ (Neither ... nor) تعبر عن النفي في الجملة الأولى والموافقة في الثانية.
- ★ (Either ... or) تعبر عن اختيار بين شيئين.
- ★ الفعل بعد (so) و (neither) يكون مساعداً مثل الجملة الأولى.
- ★ في (either ... or) نستخدم الفعل الأساسي (بدون to).

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I like cats. _____ do my sister.
   a) So b) Neither c) Either d) Both
2. He isn't hungry. _____ am I.
   a) So b) Neither c) Either d) Both
3. _____ you come with us _____ stay here.
   a) Either – or b) Neither – nor c) So – or d) Both – and
4. They can't come. _____ can we.
   a) So b) Neither c) Either d) Both
5. She likes reading. _____ does her brother.
   a) So b) Neither c) Either d) Both
6. _____ tea _____ coffee is fine for me.
   a) So b) Neither c) Either d) Both

B Rewrite using (So / Neither ... nor / Either ... or):

1. I play tennis. My brother plays tennis too.
   → _____
2. I don't like spinach. My sister doesn't like it.
   → _____
3. You can take the blue bag. You can take the red bag.
   → _____
4. He hasn't finished the test. His friend hasn't either.
   → _____
5. We are busy. Our parents are busy too.
   → _____
6. Do you want juice? Do you want milk?
   → _____

C Complete the sentences:

1. I can't solve this problem. _____ can my friend.
2. _____ you study now _____ study later.
3. She is coming to the party. _____ am I.
4. I haven't got any money. _____ has he.
5. _____ call me in the morning _____ in the evening.
6. He likes swimming. _____ does his cousin.

Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ I like cake. so I do. (✗) → I like cake. So do I.
- ✗ He isn't here. so am I. (✗) → He isn't here. Neither am I.
- ✗ Either you to help me or to wait. (✗)
  → Either you help me or wait.

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- → افهم معنى الجملة الأولى جيداً قبل اختيار التركيب.
- → ركز على الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى.
- → تأكد من استخدام الشكل الصحيح لكل تركيب.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

So = الموافقة
Neither ... nor = النفي والموافقة
Either ... or = اختيار بين إثنين

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

للصف الثالث الإعدادي
2026 / 2027

Lesson 13 So do I / Neither do I – So does he / Neither does he
وأنا كذلك / وأنا أيضاً لا – وهو كذلك / وهو أيضاً لا

تستخدم هذه التراكيب للتعبير عن الموافقة أو عدم الموافقة مع شخص آخر في رأي أو فعل.

1 So do I (وأنا كذلك)

تستخدمها للموافقة على جملة إيجابية في المضارع البسيط مع الضمائر I / we / you / they

So + do + I / we / you / they.

أمثلة

- I like reading books. أحب قراءة الكتب.
  So do I. وأنا كذلك.
- We play football on Friday. نلعب كرة القدم يوم الجمعة.
  So do we. وأنا كذلك.
- You enjoy music. أنت تستمتع بالموسيقى.
  So do you. وأنت كذلك.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تأتي بعد الجملة الإيجابية مباشرة.
- ✓ تستخدم (I / we / you / they) مع (So do).
- ✓ لا تتغير مع الزمن أو الفاعل.

2 Neither do I (وأنا أيضاً لا)

تستخدمها لعدم الموافقة على جملة سلبية في المضارع البسيط مع الضمائر I / we / you / they

Neither + do + I / we / you / they.

أمثلة

- I don't like coffee. أنا لا أحب القهوة.
  Neither do I. وأنا أيضاً لا.
- We aren't from Luxor. نحن لسنا من الأقصر.
  Neither do we. وأنا أيضاً لا.
- They don't watch TV. هم لا يشاهدون التلفاز.
  Neither do they. وأنا أيضاً لا.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تأتي بعد الجملة السلبية مباشرة.
- ✓ تستخدم (Neither do I / we / you / they).
- ✓ نفي الفعل يبقى في الجملة الأولى فقط.

3 So does he / Neither does he

تستخدمها للموافقة أو عدم الموافقة عند الحديث عن مفرد غائب (he / she / it).

So / Neither + does + he / she / it.

أمثلة

- He likes football. هو يحب كرة القدم.
  So does he. وهو كذلك.
- She doesn't like maths. هي لا تحب الرياضيات.
  Neither does she. وهي أيضاً لا.
- Ali can swim. علي يستطيع السباحة.
  So does Ali. وعلي كذلك.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تستخدم (it / she / he) مع (does).
- ✓ تأتي بعد الجملة الإيجابية أو السلبية مباشرة.

مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب الأربع

التركيب	الاستخدام	الشكل	الضمائر المستخدمة	مثال
So do I	موافقة على جملة إيجابية	So + do + I / we / you / they	I / we / you / they	I like music. So do I.
Neither do I	عدم موافقة على جملة سلبية	Neither + do + I / we / you / they	I / we / you / they	I don't like tea. Neither do I.
So does he	موافقة على جملة إيجابية	So + does + he / she / it	he / she / it	He plays tennis. So does he.
Neither does he	عدم موافقة على جملة سلبية	Neither + does + he / she / it	he / she / it	She isn't tired. Neither does she.

ملاحظات مهمة

- ✓ إذا كان الفعل في الجملة الأولى (يساعد) (do)، تستخدم (does / does) فقط في الرد.
- ✓ لا تكرر الفعل في الجملة الثانية.
- ✓ تستخدم هذه التراكيب في الحوار اليومي والأسئلة والإجابات.
- ✓ انتبه لا اختيار الضمير الصحيح (I / we / you / they) أو (he / she / it).
- ✓ يمكن استخدام (So + be + ... (am, is, are) للصفات أيضاً.

مثال: I am happy. So am I. / He is tired. So is he.

أمثلة إضافية

- I speak English well. So do I.
  أنا أتحدث الإنجليزية جيداً. وأنا كذلك.
- We won the match. So did we.
  لقد فزنا بالمباراة. ونحن كذلك.
- You don't like sugar. Neither do you.
  أنت لا تحب السكر. وأنت أيضاً لا.
- They are coming tomorrow. So are they.
  إنهم قادمون غداً. وهم كذلك.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I like ice cream. _____ do I.
   a) So b) Neither c) Too d) Either
2. We don't have a car. _____ do we.
   a) So b) Neither c) Also d) Either
3. He is very good at English. _____.
   a) So does he b) So do he c) So he does d) Does so he
4. She doesn't like swimming. _____.
   a) Neither does she b) Neither she does
   c) So doesn't she d) Neither do she
5. You are my best friend. _____.
   a) So you are b) So are you
   c) So do you d) So you do
6. They can't speak French. _____.
   a) So can't they b) Neither can they
   c) So they can't d) Neither they can

B Rewrite using So do I / Neither do I / So does he / Neither does he:

1. I enjoy listening to songs. (موافق)
   _____
2. I don't like homework. (لا أوافق)
   _____
3. He plays video games every day. (موافق)
   _____
4. He doesn't like early mornings. (لا أوافق)
   _____
5. We are from Egypt. (موافق)
   _____
6. We don't watch horror movies. (لا أوافق)
   _____

C Complete the dialogue:

1. A: I like reading stories.
   B: _____.
2. A: I don't like getting up early.
   B: _____.
3. A: He is very kind.
   B: _____.
4. A: She doesn't like onions.
   B: _____.
5. A: We had a great time.
   B: _____.
6. A: They can play the guitar.
   B: _____.

Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ I like tea. I so do. (✓ الصحيح: I like tea. So do I.)
- ✗ He doesn't like pizza. Neither he does.
  (✓ الصحيح: He doesn't like pizza. Neither does he.)
- ✗ We are ready. So we do.
  (✓ الصحيح: We are ready. So are we.)

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ★ ابحث عن الفعل الساعد (do / does) في الجملة الأولى.
- ★ تأكد من نوع الجملة (موافقة أم عدم موافقة).
- ★ اختر الضمير الصحيح.
- ★ تذكر: لا تكرر الفعل في الجملة الثانية.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

So do I / So does he = موافقة
Neither do I / Neither does he = عدم موافقة

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

Lesson 14

So neither do I – So neither does he

وأنا أيضاً لا أفعل ذلك – وهو أيضاً لا يفعل ذلك

تستخدم هذه التراكيب للتعبير عن عدم الموافقة مع شخص آخر بعد جملة تحتوي (neither . . nor).

1 So neither do I وأنا أيضاً لا أفعل ذلك

تستخدم في الإجابة عندما يكون فعل الجملة السابقة في المضارع البسيط مع (neither ... nor).

So + neither + do + I.

أمثلة

- I don't like spinach.
  Neither do I. — أنا لا أحب السبانخ. وأنا أيضاً لا أحب.
- We didn't go to the park.
  Neither do I. — لم نذهب إلى الحديقة. وأنا أيضاً لم أذهب.
- They aren't ready yet.
  Neither do I. — هم ليسوا مستعدين بعد. وأنا أيضاً لست مستعداً.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تستخدم (do) مع الضمير I.
- ✓ تأتي بعد الجملة السلبية مباشرة.
- ✓ لا تكرر الفعل بعد (neither do I).

2 So neither does he وهو أيضاً لا يفعل ذلك

تستخدم في الإجابة عندما يكون فاعل الجملة السابقة غير I (هو / هي / اسم مفرد).

So + neither + does + he / she / it.

أمثلة

- He doesn't like coffee.
  So neither does he. — هو لا يحب القهوة. وهو أيضاً لا يحب.
- She hasn't finished her work.
  So neither does she. — هي لم تُنهِ عملها. وهي أيضاً لم تُنهِ.
- Ali can't swim.
  So neither does Ali. — علي لا يستطيع السباحة. وعلي أيضاً لا يستطيع.

ملاحظات

- ✓ نستخدم (does) مع he / she / اسم مفرد.
- ✓ تأتي بعد الجملة السلبية مباشرة.
- ✓ لا تكرر الفعل بعد (neither does ...).

3 مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب

التركيب	الاستخدام
So neither do I	أجيب بـ لا عندما يكون الفعل في النفي والفاعل (أنا).
So neither does he	أجيب بـ لا عندما يكون الفعل في النفي والفاعل (هو / هي / اسم مفرد).

أمثلة مقارنة

- I don't like tea.
  Neither do I. — أنا لا أحب الشاي. وأنا أيضاً لا أحب.
- She doesn't like tea.
  Neither does she. — هي لا تحب الشاي. وهي أيضاً لا تحب.
- We aren't late.
  Neither are we. — نحن لسنا متأخرين. ونحن أيضاً لسنا.

مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب الأربعة

التركيب	الشكل	الاستخدام	مثال
So do I	So + do + I	موافقة في جملة إيجابية (أنا)	I like music. So do I.
So does he	So + does + he / she / it	موافقة في جملة إيجابية (هو / هي / اسم مفرد)	He likes football. So does he.
So neither do I	So + neither + do + I	عدم موافقة في جملة سلبية (أنا)	I don't like onions. So neither do I.
So neither does he	So + neither + does + he / she / it	عدم موافقة في جملة سلبية (هو / هي / اسم مفرد)	He doesn't like onions. So neither does he.

ملاحظات مهمة

- ✓ (neither ... nor) تستخدم الفعل في النفي.
- ✓ الإجابة بـ (So neither do I / So neither does he) تعني: "وأنا أيضاً لا / وهو أيضاً لا".
- ✓ لا تكرر الفعل بعد (neither do / does).
- ✓ يجب أن يكون زمن الفعل في الجملتين متماثلاً.

مثال توضيحي:

- I didn't see the match. — Neither did I.
- He didn't see the match. — Neither did he.

أمثلة إضافية

- I can't ride a bike. — So neither do I. — لا أستطيع ركوب الدراجة. وأنا أيضاً لا أستطيع.
- He hasn't seen this film. — So neither does he. — هو لم يشاهد هذا الفيلم. وهو أيضاً لم يشاهده.
- We didn't buy a new car. — So neither did we. — لم نشترِ سيارة جديدة. ونحن أيضاً لم نشترِ.
- She isn't coming today. — So neither is she. — هي لا تأتي اليوم. وهي أيضاً لا تأتي.
- Ali can't play the guitar. — So neither can Ali. — علي لا يستطيع عزف الجيتار. وعلي أيضاً لا يستطيع.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I don't like cheese. _____ do I.
   a) So b) Neither c) Too d) Either
2. He doesn't play tennis. _____ does he.
   a) So b) Neither c) Either d) Both
3. We can't go to the cinema. _____ can we.
   a) So b) Neither c) Too d) Either
4. She hasn't finished the homework. _____ has she.
   a) So b) Neither c) Too d) Both
5. Ali doesn't like coffee. _____ does Ali.
   a) So b) Neither c) Either d) Both
6. I didn't do my homework. _____ did I.
   a) So b) Neither c) Too d) Either

B Rewrite using (So neither do I / So neither does he):

1. I don't like olives.
   → _____
2. He doesn't watch football.
   → _____
3. We can't speak French.
   → _____
4. She hasn't seen that movie.
   → _____
5. I didn't go to the party.
   → _____
6. Ali doesn't eat meat.
   → _____

C Complete the dialogue:

1. A: I don't like noisy places.
   B: _____.
2. A: He doesn't have a car.
   B: _____.
3. A: We can't travel tomorrow.
   B: _____.
4. A: She hasn't called me.
   B: _____.
5. A: Ali doesn't like math.
   B: _____.
6. A: I didn't understand the lesson.
   B: _____.

Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- × I don't like soup. Neither I do.
  (الصح: So neither do I.)
- × He doesn't play. Neither does he.
  (الصح: So neither does he.)
- × We can't go. So neither we can.
  (الصح: So neither can we.)

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- اقرأ الجملة الأولى جيداً وحدد الفاعل والفعل.
- ★ إذا كان الفاعل (أنا) استخدم (So neither do I).
- ★ إذا كان الفاعل (هو / هي / اسم مفرد)
- ★ استخدم (So neither does he / she / it).

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

So neither do I = وأنا أيضاً لا أفعل ذلك

So neither does he = وهو أيضاً لا يفعل ذلك

★ A World of Imagination ★

عالم من الخيال

Lesson 15 So that – In order to – So as to / In order that

لذلك – من أجل ذلك – لكي / حتى

تستخدم هذه التراكيب للتعبير عن الهدف أو الغرض، وتفيد بأن شيئاً يحدث لسبب أو بهدف معين.

1 So that (حتى / لكي)

تستخدم So that للتعبير عن الغرض أو النتيجة المرجوة من الفعل في الجملة السابقة.

S + V + so that + S + V

أمثلة

- I study hard so that I can pass the exam.
  أدرس بجد لكي أنجح في الامتحان.
- She saves money so that she can buy a laptop.
  تدخر المال لكي تستطيع شراء لابتوب.
- We left early so that we wouldn't miss the train.
  غادرنا مبكرًا حتى لا نفوت القطار.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تعبر عن الغرض أو النتيجة المتوقعة.
- ✓ تأتي بعد جملة فعلية في الزمن المضارع الماضي أو المستقبل.

2 In order to (من أجل / لكي)

تستخدم In order to للتعبير عن الغرض بطريقة رسمية أكثر.

S + V + in order to + S + V

أمثلة

- I wake up early in order to study.
  أستيقظ مبكرًا من أجل الدراسة.
- He exercises every day in order to stay healthy.
  يمارس الرياضة كل يوم من أجل الحفاظ على صحته.
- They saved money in order to buy a house.
  ادخروا المال من أجل شراء منزل.

ملاحظات

- ✓ تعبير رسمي أكثر من So that.
- ✓ تستخدم في الكتابة والمحادثة الرسمية.

3 So as to / In order that (حتى / لكي)

تستخدم So as to و In order that م.غ. للتعبير عن الغرض بأسلوب رسمي أكثر، وغالبًا في الجمل الطويلة.

S + V + so as to / in order that + S + V

أمثلة

- He speaks softly so as not to wake the baby.
  يتحدث بهدوء حتى لا يستيقظ الطفل.
- They left early so as to catch the bus.
  غادروا مبكرًا حتى يلحقوا بالحافلة.
- We set the alarm early in order that we wouldn't miss the meeting.
  ضبطنا المنبه مبكرًا لكي لا نفوت الإجتماع.

ملاحظات

- ✓ أكثر رسمية واستخداماً في الكتابة والخطابات.
- ✓ تستخدم للتعبير عن سبب واضح في جملة تالية.

مقارنة سريعة بين التراكيب

التركيب	المعنى	الشكل	الاستخدام	مثال
So that	لذلك / حتى	S + V + so that + S + V	غرض أو نتيجة مباشرة	I study hard so that I can pass.
In order to	من أجل	S + V + in order to + S + V	غرض بطريقة رسمية	He exercises in order to stay fit.
So as to	حتى لا يحدث شيء	S + V + so as to + S + V	غرض لمنع أو تجنب شيء	He speaks softly so as not to wake them.
In order that	حتى لا يحدث شيء	S + V + in order that + S + V	غرض رسمي في جملة طويلة	They left early in order that they wouldn't miss the train.

ملاحظات مهمة

- So that: لغرض أو غرض مباشر.
- In order to: غرض بطريقة رسمية.
- So as to: لمنع حدوث شيء.
- In order that: غرض رسمي في جملة طويلة.
- يمكن أن تحل So that و In order to في بعض الحالات.

أمثلة إضافية

- She studies hard so that she can get a good job.
  تدرس بجد لكي تحصل على وظيفة جيدة.
- We took umbrellas in order to avoid getting wet.
  أخذنا المظلات من أجل تجنب البلل.
- He spoke slowly so as not to confuse the listeners.
  تحدث ببطء حتى لا يربك المستمعين.
- The manager explained the rules in order that everyone would understand.
  شرح المدير القواعد لكي يفهم الجميع.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I study hard _____ I can get high marks.
   a) so b) so that c) in order to d) so as to
2. She saves money _____ she can buy a car.
   a) so b) so that c) in order to d) in order that
3. He exercises every day _____ he can stay fit.
   a) in order to b) so that c) so as to d) in order that
4. We left early _____ we wouldn't miss the train.
   a) so b) so that c) in order to d) so as to
5. They set the alarm early _____ they wouldn't be late.
   a) so b) so that c) in order to d) in order that

B Rewrite using (So that / In order to / So as to / In order that):

1. I wake up early. I can study.
   _____
2. She eats healthy food. She can stay strong.
   → _____
3. He didn't want to be late. He left early.
   _____
4. We practice every day. We can win the match.
   _____
5. They turn off the lights. They save electricity.
   _____

C Complete the sentences:

1. I take vitamins _____ I stay healthy.
2. He works hard _____ he can achieve his goals.
3. She speaks softly _____ not to wake the baby.
4. We study together _____ we can help each other.
5. They saved money _____ they could travel next summer.

Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ I study hard so I can pass. (Incorrect – use so that)
- ✗ He works in order so he can be rich. (Incorrect – use in order to)
- ✗ We left early so as that we wouldn't miss the train. (Incorrect – use so as to or in order that)
- ✗ She didn't tell me in order to help me. (Incorrect – use so that or in order that)

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ★ أقرأ الجملة جيداً وحدد الهدف.
- ★ اختر التراكيب لة حسب المعنى والسياق.
- ★ اختبر نفسك للتفريق بين So that و In order to و So as to in order that
- ★ تدرب على كتابة جمل متنوعة بهذه التراكيب.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

استخدم التراكيب الصحيحة حسب الهدف

ة ونوع الجملة للحصول على جمل دقيقة وواضحة.

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

قواعد الوحدة السادسة – الصفحات (52 – 61)

A – Introduction

Language is more than grammar rules. It is the tool that helps us express our ideas clearly and make a real difference in our lives and in the lives of others.
In this unit, you will learn important structures to emphasize, connect, and organize your ideas in speaking and writing.

B – Objectives

By the end of this unit, you will be able to:

- Use cleft sentences to emphasize information.
- Use emphatic do / does / did for emphasis.
- Use inversion correctly.
- Use linking words and connectors to show relationships between ideas.
- Use discourse markers and sequencers to organize your writing.
- Write in a more formal style when needed.
- Avoid common mistakes in grammar and usage.
- Apply what you learn in different types of exercises and real situations.

C – Grammar Map خريطة قواعد الوحدة

Unit 6
Making a Difference
صنع فرق
1 Cleft Sentences (It is / was ... that / who) جمل التوكيد
2 Emphatic Do / Does / Did & Inversion التوكيد والانقلاب
3 Linking Words & Connectors أدوات الربط
4 Discourse Markers & Sequencers عوامل الربط وتسلسل الأفكار
5 Formal vs Informal English اللغة الرسمية وغير الرسمية
6 Common Grammar Revision مراجعة شاملة
7 Practice & Application تدريبات وتطبيقات

D – What's New in This Unit?

★ New structures for emphasis and clarity ★ Useful linking words ★ Better organization of ideas
★ Formal style in writing ★ High-frequency grammar for exams

E – Unit Contents

Lesson	Topic	Page
Lesson 1	Cleft Sentences (It is / was ... that / who)	53
Lesson 2	Emphatic Do / Does / Did	54
Lesson 3	Inversion	54
Lesson 4	Linking Words & Connectors	55–56
Lesson 5	Discourse Markers & Sequencers	56
Lesson 6	Formal vs Informal English	57
Lesson 7	Common Grammar Revision	58
Lesson 8	Exercises (Basic – Mixed)	59
Lesson 9	Advanced Exercises	60
Lesson 10	Review – Mini Test – Golden Notes	61

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 1 Cleft Sentences (It is / was ... that / who)
جمل التوكيد

جمل التوكيد هي جمل تستخدمها لإبراز جزء معين من الجملة وإعطائه أهمية خاصة.
تستخدم التركيب (It is / was ... that / who) لتسليط الضوء على شخص أو شيء أو زمان أو مكان.

1 The Structure التركيب

It + be (is / am / are / was / were) + the part we want to emphasize + that / who + the rest of the sentence.
(فعل الكون + الجزء المراد توكيده + that أو who + باقي الجملة)

التركيب المستخدم	الجزء الذي تم توكيده	الترجمة	المثال
It is + who	my brother (الشخص)	إن أخي هو الذي ساعدني.	It is my brother who helped me.
It was + that	yesterday (الزمان)	كان بالأمس أن التقينا.	It was yesterday that we met.
It is + that	English (الشيء)	إن اللغة الإنجليزية هي التي أستمتع بها أكثر.	It is English that I enjoy most.
It was + that	in Luxor (المكان)	كان في الأقصر حيث عاش.	It was in Luxor that he lived.
It is + that	with patience (الطريقة)	إنه بالصبر الذي تحقق النجاح.	It is with patience that we achieve success.
It was + who	my parents (الشخص)	كان والداي هما الذين شجعاني.	It was my parents who encouraged me.

2 When do we use Cleft Sentences? متى تستخدم جمل التوكيد ؟

1 لتأكيد فاعل الجملة (الشخص الذي قام بالفعل).	→ It was Ahmed who won the match.
2 لتأكيد مفعول به أو شيء مهم في الجملة.	→ It is this book that I need.
3 لتأكيد زمان حدوث الفعل.	→ It was last week that we visited Cairo.
4 لتأكيد مكان حدوث الفعل.	→ It was at the library that I found the book.
5 لتأكيد سبب أو طريقة أو أداة.	→ It is by working hard that you succeed.

3 Important Notes ملاحظات مهمة

★ تستخدم (who) فقط مع الأشخاص.	→ It is Sarah who called me.
★ تستخدم (that) مع الأشياء، الأماكن، الأزمنة، الأسباب، الطرق.	→ It is honesty that makes people respect you.
★ يمكن حذف (that) في الكلام اليومي ولكن لا نحذفه في الكتابة الرسمية.	→ I know the man. = I know the man that you met.
★ إذا كان الجزء المؤكد ضميراً (I / he /...) نستخدم (who) (who...).	→ It was he who opened the door.
★ نضع (It) دائماً في بداية الجملة مهما كان الجزء المؤكد.	→ It is in the morning that I study best.

3 More Examples أمثلة إضافية

- It is Mona who is very kind. إن منى هي التي لطيفة جداً.
- It was in 2012 that we moved to this city. كان في عام 2012 أننا انتقلنا إلى هذه المدينة.
- It is the teacher who explained the lesson. إن المعلم هو الذي شرح الدرس.
- It was because of rain that the match was canceled. كان بسبب المطر أن المباراة ألغيت.
- It is reading that improves your mind. إن القراءة هي التي تحسن عقلك.
- It was three times that he called me. لقد اتصل بي ثلاث مرات.
- It was to help others that she joined the club. كان لمساعدة الأخرين أن انضمت إلى النادي.
- It is at home that I feel comfortable. إنه في المنزل حيث أشعر بالراحة.

5 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

✗ It is me who did it.	✗ خطأ	→ It is I who did it.	✓ صحيح	
✗ It was yesterday when we met.	✗ خطأ	→ It was yesterday that we met.	✓ صحيح	
✗ It is because he was tired that he slept.	✓ صحيح			
✗ It is my car who is very fast.	✗ خطأ	→ It is my car that is very fast.	✓ صحيح	

6 Quick Check تدريب سريع

Choose the correct answer:

1. It is ..... who helped me.
   a) Ahmed b) Ahmed who c) who Ahmed d) that Ahmed
2. It was ..... that we went to the zoo.
   a) last Friday b) last Friday that c) that last Friday d) Friday last
3. It is English ..... I love.
   a) who b) which c) that d) whose
4. It was in Aswan ..... I spent my holiday.
   a) that b) where c) who d) which
5. It is by hard work ..... we reach our goals.
   a) that b) which c) who d) where

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 2 Emphatic Do / Does / Did & Inversion

التوكيد بـ do / does / did و الانقلاب

في هذه الدرس تتعلم طريقتين مهمتين لإبراز معنى الجملة والتأكيد عليه:

- التوكيد باستخدام do / does / did لإبراز الفعل وتأكيده.
- الانقلاب (Inversion) حيث تغير ترتيب الكلمات في الجملة بعد بعض الأدوات أو الظروف.

1 Emphatic Do / Does / Did التوكيد بـ do / does / did

تستخدم do / does / did مع الفعل الاساسي للتأكيد علي الفعل نفسه.
وللإجابة بقوة أو عند نفي الفعل أو عندما تريد التأكيد.

I / You / We / They + do + base verb ...
He / She / It + does + base verb ...
I / He / She / It / We / You / They + did + base verb ...

	مثال	الاستخدام
	I do like chocolate. أنا بالفعل أحب الشوكولاتة	
1- للتأكيد في الإثبات	نؤكد أن الفعل حدث بالفعل.	
	She does work hard. هي بالفعل تعمل بجد	
	He did finish his homework. هو بالفعل أنهى واجبه	
2- للإجابة بقوة على سؤال	نؤكد الإجابة.	**Do** you love your family? Yes, **I do**. **Does** he play football? Yes, **he does**.
3- للنفي مع التأكيد	تنفي الفعل ولكن نؤكد عدم حدوثه.	**I don't** like tea. **I do** like coffee. أنا لا أحب الشاي. أنا أحب القهوة بالفعل. **He doesn't** smoke. **He does** exercise. هو لا يدخن. هو بالفعل يتمرن.
4. مع الكلمات المؤكدة	تستخدمه مع كلمات مثل: (really – very – indeed – actually ...)	**I really do** appreciate your help. أنا أقدر مساعدتك حقا. **She very does** enjoy reading. هي بالفعل تستمتع بالقراءة. **He actually did** see the accident. هو بالفعل رأى الحادث.

2 Inversion (الانقلاب)

تستخدم الانقلاب بعد بعض الكلمات أو التعابير. فنضع الفعل قبل الفاعل.

الصيغة:

Negative/Restrictive word / Expression + Auxiliary Verb + Subject + Main Verb ...

الكلمة / التعبير	الشكل بعد الانقلاب	مثال
Never أبداً	Never + auxiliary + subject + main verb	I have never been to Paris. → **Never have I been** to Paris.
Rarely نادراً	Rarely + auxiliary + subject + main verb	He rarely arrives late. → **Rarely does he** arrive late.
Hardly يصعب / بالكاد	Hardly + auxiliary + subject + main verb	She has hardly finished. → **Hardly has she** finished.
Scarcely بصعوبة	Scarcely + auxiliary + subject + main verb	We had scarcely left. → **Scarcely had we left** when it rained.
Seldom قليلاً ما	Seldom + auxiliary + subject + main verb	They seldom visit us. → **Seldom do they** visit us.
No sooner ... than ... ما إن ... حتى ...	No sooner + auxiliary + subject + main verb + than ...	No sooner had he left **than** the phone rang.

ملاحظات مهمة

- تستخدم الفعل المساعد المناسب (have / has / had / do / does / did).
- لو لم يوجد فعل مساعد. نستخدم (do / does / did)
- الانقلاب يأتي بعد الكلمات المذكورة فقط.

3 More Examples أمثلة إضافية

- I do agree with you.
- He does understand English well.
- They did finish the project yesterday.
- I don't like horror films. I do prefer comedy.
- She doesn't speak French, but she does speak German.

- Never forget your parents.
  → Never do forget your parents.
- Rarely have I seen such kindness.
- Hardly had they arrived when the lights went out.
- Seldom will you find such a generous person.
- No sooner did I open the door than the cat ran out.

4 توسيع الفكرة

التوكيد والانقلاب بساعدانك علي:

- ✓ إبراز الفكرة المهمة في الجملة.
- ✓ جعل أسلوبك أقوى وأكثر تأثيراً.
- ✓ كتابة جمل احترافية في الامتحانات والمقالات.

5 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

✗ I never been to Aswan.	→ Never have I been to Aswan.
✗ He don't like fish.	→ He doesn't like fish. (أو He does not like fish.)
✗ I do very like tea.	→ I do like tea very much. / I really do like tea.
✗ No sooner I saw him than I called him.	→ No sooner did I see him than I called him.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1. I do _____ my best in every exam.
   a) making b) make c) made d) makes
2. He _____ love his country.
   a) does b) do c) did d) doing
3. _____ you like ice cream?
   a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Are
4. She doesn't drive, but she _____ ride a bike.
   a) can b) do c) does d) did
5. Never _____ I met such a kind teacher.
   a) have b) has c) do d) did

7 Rewrite using (Emphatic do / does / did):

1. I like science. (Use do)
   → I _____.
2. He works hard. (Use does)
   → He _____.
3. They finished the work. (Use did)
   → They _____.
4. She doesn't smoke. (Use does)
   → She _____.
6. We understand the lesson. (Use do)
   → We _____.

8 Rewrite using inversion:

1. I have never seen this film.
   → _____.
2. He rarely goes to the club.
   → _____.
3. We had hardly started when it rained.
   → _____.
4. They seldom visit their grandparents.
   → _____.
5. No sooner had she left than it started to rain.
   → _____.

Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ لا تضع (because (so في نفس الجملة.
  → I came late because I missed the bus. (صحيح)
- ✗ لا تنسى المساعد في جمل الانقلاب
  → Never do I forget. (✗) → Never do I forget. (✓)

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- عند تصع إعادة صياغة باستخدام التوكيد. استخدم (do / does / did) قبل الفعل الأساسي.
- ★ إذا بدأت الجملة بـ جمل (Never / ...) ي قلب الفعل
- وضع قسم المساعد قبل الفاعل

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

التوكيد والانقلاب = قوة في التعبير

استخدمهما بذكاء في الكتابة والمحادثة.

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 3 — **Linking Words & Connectors** — **أدوات الربط**

تساعدنا أدوات الربط على ربط الأفكار و الجمل معا بحيث تصبح كتابتنا و حديثنا أكثر وضوحا و ترابطا و منطقا.
استخدام الاداة المناسبة يجعل النص أسهل للمعنى و أقوي في التعبير.

1 Types of Linking Words أنواع أدوات الربط

A) Addition – الإضافة

تستخدم لإضافة فكرة جديدة تدعم الفكرة السابقة.

Linking Words أنواع	أمثلة	Example مثال
• and	و	• I like English, **and** I enjoy reading.
• also	أيضاً	• She is smart. **Also**, she is kind.
• too	أيضا (في آخر الجملة)	• We worked hard; **moreover**, we succeeded.
• as well as	بالإضافة إلى	
• in addition	إضافة إلى ذلك	
• besides	بجانب ذلك	
• furthermore	علاوة على ذلك	
• moreover	فضلا عن ذلك	

B) Contrast – التضاد

تستخدم لإظهار الاختلاف أو عكس فكرة.

Linking Words أنواع	أمثلة	Example مثال
• but	لكن	• I wanted to go out, **but** it was raining.
• however	مع ذلك	• He is rich; **however**, he isn't happy.
• although	على الرغم من	• **Although** it was late, he went to school.
• though	على الرغم من ذلك	
• even though	رغم ذلك	
• whereas	بينما / في حين أن	
• while	بينما	
• nevertheless	مع ذلك	

C) Cause – السبب

تستخدم لبيان السبب أو العلة.

Linking Words أنواع	أمثلة	Example مثال
• because	لأن	• I stayed at home **because** I was tired.
• since	بما أن	• **As** it was cold, we wore jackets.
• as	حيث ان/ لأن	• The match was cancelled **due to** the rain.
• for	لأن	
• owing to	بسبب	
• due to	نظرا	
• because of	بسبب	

D) Result – النتيجة

تستخدم لبيان النتيجة أو الأثر.

Linking Words أنواع	أمثلة	Example مثال
• so	لذا / لذلك	• It was late, **so** we missed the bus.
• therefore	لذلك	• He studied hard; **therefore**, he passed.
• as a result	نتيجة لذلك	• **As a result**, we won the competition.
• consequently	وبالتالي	
• thus	وبذلك	
• hence	ومن ثم	

E) Purpose – الغرض

تستخدم لبيان الهدف أو الغاية.

Linking Words أنواع	أمثلة	Example مثال
• so that	حتى / لكي	• I study hard **so that** I can succeed.
• in order to	لكي	• She saves money **in order to** travel abroad.
• in order that	حتى	• He wakes up early **in order that** he won't be late.
• to	لـ/ من أجل	
• for the purpose of	من أجل / من أجل أن	

F) Example / Explanation – المثال / التفسير

تستخدم لذكر مثال أو توضيح.

Linking Words أنواع	أمثلة	Example مثال
• for example	على سبيل المثال	• Many fruits are healthy, **such as** apples and oranges.
• such as	مثل	• He is, **that is**, very intelligent.
• like	مثل	• **In other words**, you must practice every day.
• that is	أي	
• in other words	بمعنى آخر	

2 Important Notes ملاحظات مهمة

1. لا نضع (,) قبل (and).
   ✗ I like tea, and coffee.
   ✓ I like tea and coffee.
2. نضع (,) قبل (but / however / although).
   ✗ I was tired but I studied.
   ✓ I was tired, but I studied.
3. مع (because / because of) لا نضع فاصلة.
   ✗ He didn't come because he was sick.
   ✓ He didn't come because he was sick.
4. (Therefore) في بداية الجملة :
   • It rained. So, we stayed at home.
   • It rained. Therefore, we stayed at home.

3 More Examples أمثلة إضافية

- **We cleaned the room, and we did the homework.**
  نظفنا الغرفة، و قمنا بواجبنا.
- **He was ill; however, he went to work.**
  كان مريضا؛ مع ذلك، ذهب إلى العمل.
- **Since you are here, let's start.**
  بما أنك هنا فلنبدأ.
- **She was hungry, so she ate a sandwich.**
  كانت جائعة، لذا أكلت ساندويتشا.
- **He studied hard so that he could get high marks.**
  درس بجد حتى يحصل على درجات عالية.
- **My brother, for example, loves football.**
  أخي، على سبيل المثال، يحب كرة القدم.
- **He is very kind. In other words, he helps everyone.**
  إنه لطيف جدا. بمعنى آخر، يساعد الجميع.

4 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

✗ I was late but I missed the bus.
✓ I was late, but I missed the bus.

✗ He didn't come because of he was sick.
✓ He didn't come because he was sick.

✗ She is smart and also beautiful.
✓ She is smart and beautiful.

✗ It was raining so we stayed at home.
✓ It was raining, so we stayed at home.

✗ Although he is rich he is not happy.
✓ Although he is rich, he is not happy.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. I was tired, _____ I continued working.
   a) and b) but c) so d) because
2. We stayed at home _____ it was raining.
   a) because b) although c) so d) moreover
3. She worked hard; _____, she passed the exam.
   a) however b) therefore c) while d) if
4. I woke up early _____ I wouldn't miss the bus.
   a) because b) so that c) but d) though
5. My father, _____, loves reading.
   a) for example b) such as c) because d) so

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable linking word from the box:

(and – but – because – so – although – therefore – in order to)

1. I was busy, _____ I didn't call you.
2. She studied hard, _____ she got high marks.
3. _____ it was cold, we wore our coats.
4. I exercise every day _____ keep healthy.
5. He loves football _____ basketball.
6. We were late, _____ we missed the train.
7. I save my money _____ buy a new laptop.

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

★ أقرأ الجمل جيداً، ثم اختر الأداة التي تعبر عن المعنى الصحيح.
★ راجع معنى كل أداة حتى لا تخلط بينها.
★ تدرب كثيراً على التحويل بين الجمل باستخدام أدوات الربط.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

أداة الربط الصحيحة = جملة واضحة + معنى مضبوط + درجة أعلى

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 5 — **Discourse Markers & Sequencers**
عوامل الربط وتسلسل الأفكار

عوامل الربط تساعدنا على تنظيم أفكارنا وربط الجمل بعضها ببعضة بسلاسة.
تُستخدم في الكتابة والمحادثة لتوضيح العلاقات بين الأفكار مثل الترتيب الزمني، الإضافة، المقارنة، النتيجة، والسبب.

1 Types of Discourse Markers أنواع عوامل الربط

النوع Type	الاستخدام Use	عوامل الربط Discourse Markers	أمثلة Examples
1. Sequencing الترتيب الزمني	لترتيب الأحداث أو الخطوات بترتيب زمني.	first, firstly, to begin with, then, next, after that, later, finally, lastly, eventually	• First, we wake up early. • Then, we have breakfast. • Finally, we go to school.
2. Addition الإضافة	لإضافة فكرة أخرى مشابهة أو مكملة.	and, also, too, in addition, moreover, furthermore, besides, additionally	• I like reading. Also, I enjoy writing. • Moreover, reading improves my mind.
3. Contrast المقارنة (التضاد)	لإظهار اختلاف أو تعارض بين فكرتين.	but, however, although, though, even though, whereas, while, on the other hand, in contrast, nevertheless, despite	• She is rich, but she isn't happy. • Although it was late, he went to school.
4. Cause & Reason السبب	لبيان سبب حدوث شيء ما.	because, since, as, for, due to, owing to, on account of	• I stayed at home because I was sick. • He failed due to a lack of practice.
5. Result & Effect النتيجة	لبيان النتيجة المترتبة على سبب ما.	so, therefore, thus, consequently, as a result, accordingly, hence	• It was raining, so we stayed inside. • He studied hard; therefore, he succeeded.
6. Purpose الغرض	لبيان الهدف أو النية من عمل ما.	so that, in order to, in order that, for the purpose of, to	• I study hard so that I can get good marks. • She left early in order to catch the train.
7. Condition الشرط	للتعبير عن شرط لحدوث شيء آخر.	if, unless, provided that, as long as, on condition that	• If you study well, you will pass. • You can go out provided that you finish your homework.

2 More Examples أمثلة إضافية

★ First, turn on the computer. Then, open your book.
أولاً، شغل الكمبيوتر. ثم افتح كتابك.

★ I want to travel. In addition, I want to learn new languages.
أريد أن أسافر. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، أريد أن أتعلم لغات جديدة.

★ He is clever; however, he is lazy.
هو ذكي؛ ومع ذلك، فهو كسول.

★ Because it was cold, we wore jackets.
بما أن الجو كان بارداً، ارتدينا معاطف.

★ He was tired; therefore, he went to bed early.
كان متعباً؛ لذلك ذهب إلى النوم مبكرًا.

★ I study hard so that I can achieve my goals.
أدرس بجد حتى أستطيع تحقيق أهدافي.

★ If it rains, we will stay at home.
إذا أمطر، ستبقي في المنزل.

3 Notes ملاحظات مهمة

- لا نضع (so) بعد (because) في نفس الجملة.
  خطأ: I stayed home because I was sick, so I didn't go out. ✗
  صح: I stayed home because I was sick. ✓
- تستخدم (because / since / as) للسبب.
- تستخدم (so / therefore / as a result) للنتيجة.
- تستخدم المستخدم (although / but) للمعمارنة أو التضاد.
- تستخدم (first / then / next / finally) للترتيب.
- تستخدم (so that / in order to) للغرض.
- قبل ، العمل أما (although / even though) نضع (to).
  خطأ: Although to was late, he went. ✗
  صح: Although it was late, he went. ✓

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. We woke up early, _____ we could catch the bus.
   a) because b) so c) although d) however
2. I like football. _____, I like basketball.
   a) But b) Also c) However d) Therefore
3. She was tired, _____ she went to bed early.
   a) so b) although c) because d) but
4. _____ it was raining, we went out.
   a) Because b) Although c) So d) Therefore
5. I study hard _____ I can pass the exam.
   a) so that b) because c) although d) but

5 Complete the sentences with a suitable discourse marker:

1. I was sleepy, _____ I drank a cup of coffee.
2. We missed the bus, _____ we had to take a taxi.
3. He failed the test _____ he didn't study.
4. _____, wash your hands before eating.
5. I tried my best; _____, I didn't win.
6. I opened the book _____ read the first page.
7. We stayed at home _____ the weather was bad.

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

عند اختيار عامل الربط المناسب، اسأل نفسك:

- هل أذكر سببًا؟ (Cause)
- هل أعبر عن نتيجة؟ (Result)
- هل أذكر الغرض؟ (Purpose)
- هل أضيف فكرة؟ (Addition)
- هل أقارن أو تضاد؟ (Contrast)
- هل (Sequencing) (Say

اختر العامل الذي يعبر عن العلاقة بين الأفكار بشكل صحيح.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

عوامل الربط الصغيرة تصنع فرقاً كبيرًا في الكتابة والمحادثة.
استخدمها دائمًا لكتابة نصوص واضحة ومنظمة وذات معنى قوي.

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 6 — **Formal vs Informal English**
اللغة الرسمية وغير الرسمية

تختلف اللغة التي نستخدمها في الكتابة الرسمية عن اللغة التي نستخدمها في الحديث اليومي مع الأصدقاء أو العائلة.
في الامتحانات، خاصة في موضوعات التعبير والرسائل الرسمية، من المهم أن نستخدم اللغة المناسبة للموقف.

1 What is the Difference? ما الفرق؟

Formal English (رسمية)
تستخدم في الكتابة الرسمية مثل: الرسائل، المقالات، التقارير، الامتحانات.
- تستخدم كلمات أكثر أكثر ورسمية.
- الجمل تكون أطول وأكثر تنظيمًا
- لا نستخدم الاختصارات.
- الأسلوب يكون مهذباً ومحترماً

Informal English (غير رسمية)
تستخدم في الحديث اليومي مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.
- الكلمات بسيطة
- الجمل قصيرة وغير مركبةٌ
- don't, can't, I'm مثل: don't, can't, I'm ...
- الأسلوب يكون ودياً وبسيطاً

2 Common Informal vs Formal Words كلمات شائعة: رسمية مقابل غير رسمية

Informal (غير رسمية)	Formal (رسمية)	Meaning (المعنى)
Kids	Children	أطفال
Get	Obtain	يحصل على
Help	Assist	يساعد
Buy	Purchase	يشتري
Start	Commence	يبدأ
End	Finish / Conclude	ينهي
Use	Utilize	يستخدم
Big	Large	كبير
Good	Excellent / Beneficial	جيد / ممتاز
Important	Significant	مهم
Problem	Issue / Problem	مشكلة
Idea	Suggestion / Proposal	فكرة
Show	Demonstrate	يظهر
Think	Consider	يفكر

Informal (غير رسمية)	Formal (رسمية)	Meaning (المعنى)
Happy	Pleased / Delighted	سعيد
Try	Attempt	يحاول
Give	Provide	يعطي
Say	State	يقول / يصرح
Ask for	Request	يطلب
Need	Require	يحتاج
Talk about	Discuss	يتحدث عن
A lot of	Many / Numerous	الكثير من
At the end	Finally / In conclusion	في النهاية
Look at	Examine	ينظر إلى / يفحص
Make	Create / Produce	يصنع
Get better	Improve	يتحسن
Bad	Poor / Unfavorable	سيء
Nice	Pleasant	لطيف

3 Using Formal English متى نستخدم اللغة الرسمية؟

- عند كتابة الرسائل الرسمية (طلب – شكوي – استفسار...). ★
- لاعند كتابة المقالات والتقارير. ★
- في موضوعات التعبير وخاصة في الامتحانات. ★
- عند التحدث مع أشخاص لا نعرفهم. ★
- عند تقديم عرض أو خطاب. ★

نصائح مهمة
- ✓ اختر الكلمات الدقيقة التي تناسب المعنى.
- ✓ تجنب الكلمات العامية.
- ✓ استخدم جملًا كاملة ومترابطة.
- ✓ استخدم أدوات الربط المناسبة بين الجمل.
- ✓ راجع ما كتبته بعد الانتهاء.

4 Examples in Sentences أمثلة في جمل

Informal (غير رسمية)	Formal (رسمية)
• I want to help kids.	• I want to assist children.
• Can you give me the book?	• Could you provide me with the book?
• We had a nice time.	• We had a pleasant time.
• I will try to finish it.	• I will attempt to finish it.
• He is very good at football.	• He is very skilled at football.
• We will start the project tomorrow.	• We will commence the project tomorrow.

5 Choose the correct word:

1. We need to (buy / purchase) some new books for the library.
2. The company decided to (start / commence) production next month.
3. She was very (happy / pleased) with the results.
4. Please (help / assist) me with this exercise.
5. At the (end / conclusion) of the meeting, we thanked everyone.
6. You should (try / attempt) your best in the exam.
7. The teacher asked the students to (say / state) their opinions.

6 Rewrite using the formal word in brackets:

1. I want to help the people. (assist)
   → _____
2. We are going to start the meeting now. (commence)
   → _____
3. He bought a new car yesterday. (purchased)
   → _____
4. She is a happy girl. (pleased)
   → _____
5. Please give me your name. (provide)
   → _____

7 Complete the sentences with suitable formal words:

(require – discuss – significant – utilize – obtain)

1. We _____ more time to finish the project.
2. The meeting will _____ the new plan.
3. This is a _____ issue for our country.
4. You should _____ all the resources carefully.
5. He worked hard to _____ success.

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان
في موضوعات التعبير، استخدم اللغة الرسمية لتحصل على درجات أعلى وتظهر أنك تمتلك مهارة في الكتابة.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية
اختيار الكلمات الرسمية الصحيحة يعكس ثقافتك واحترامك للموقف ويجعل كتابتك قوية ومنظمة.

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 7 — **Common Grammar Revision**

مراجعة القواعد المهمة

في هذه الصفحة، تراجع أهم النقاط والقواعد التي تكررت كثيرًا في الامتحانات على جميع الوحدات الخمس السابقة.
نفِّذ جيدًا على الأمثلة والملاحظات حتى تستطيع حل أي سؤال بسهولة.

1 Important Revision Points نقاط مراجعة مهمة

1 Present Simple vs Present Continuous

البسيط المضارع و المضارع المستمر

Use الاستخدام	Simple بسيط	Continuous مستمر
Facts حقائق	The sun rises in the east. تشرق الشمس في الشرق.	Look! The sun is rising. انظر! الشمس تشرق.
Habits عادات	I play football every Friday. ألعب كرة القدم كل جمعة.	I am playing football now. أنا ألعب كرة القدم الآن.
General truths حقائق عامة	Water boils at 100°C. يغلي الماء عند 100 درجة.	The water is boiling. الماء يغلي.

ملاحظة: الكلمات الدالة تساعدنا على التمييز بين الزمنين.
(مثل: always – usually – every day) ⇐ للبسيط.
للمستمر. (now – at the moment – look).

2 Past Simple vs Present Perfect الماضي البسيط و المضارع التام

Use الاستخدام	Past Simple ماضي بسيط	Present Perfect مضارع تام
Finished time وقت محدد	I visited Luxor last year. زرت الأقصر العام الماضي.	I have visited Luxor. لقد زرت الأقصر.
No specific time زمن غير محدد	He watched the movie yesterday. شاهد الفيلم أمس.	He has watched the movie. لقد شاهد الفيلم.

ملاحظة: تستخدم مع (for – since – already – yet – ever – never) مع المضارع التام.

3 Used to / Would الماضي المعتاد

Used to + base verb عادة في الماضي (حالة الآن غير صحيحة)	I used to play tennis. كنت ألعب التنس.
Would + base verb عادة في الماضي (لا نقول عن الآن)	He would visit his grandparents every weekend. كان يزور أجداده كل عطلة نهاية أسبوع.

ملاحظة: (used to / would) صناستخدم انستخدم الفعل في المصدر (base form).

4 Question Forms صيغ الأسئلة

Yes / No Question سؤال نعم /لا	Do you like pizza? هل تحب البيتزا؟
Wh- Question سؤال بأداة استفهام	Where do you live? أين تعيش؟
Choice Question سؤال اختيار	Do you like tea or coffee? هل تحب الشاي
Tag Question سؤال ذيل	He is kind, isn't he? هو لطيف، أليس كذلك؟

5 Modal Verbs الأفعال الناقصة

Modal الفعل الناقص	Use الاستخدام	Example مثال
can	القدرة	I can swim. أستطيع السباحة.
must	الواجب / الضرورة	You must study hard. يجب أن تدرس بجد.
should	النصيحة	You should see a doctor. يجب أن ترى طبيبًا.
could	القدرة في الماضي	I could ride a bike. كنت أستطيع ركوب الدراجة.
may	الإذن / الاحتمال	May I come in? هل يمكنني الدخول؟
might	احتمال بسيط	It might rain later. قد تمطر لاحقًا.

6 Reported Speech الكلام المنقول

Direct Speech الكلام المباشر		Reported Speech الكلام المباشر
"I am happy."	→	He said that he was happy.
"I will help you."	→	She said that she would help me.
"I have finished."	→	He said that he had finished.
"I can swim."	→	She said that she could swim.
"I like apples."	→	He said that he liked apples.
"I am watching TV."	→	She said that she was watching TV.

ملاحظة: في الكلام المنقول نرجع الزمن خطوة واحدة إلى الخلف.

7 Common Mistakes أخطاء شائعة

- ✗ I have went to the club.
- ✗ I didn't [illegible] to school. → الصحيح
- ✗ I am [illegible] to school. → الصحيح
- ✗ I am agree with you. → الصحيح
- ✗ She has already yet finished. → الصحيح
- ✗ I used to to play football. → الصحيح I used to play football.
- ✗ Do you goes to school? → الصحيح Do you go to school?
- ✗ They has been here. → الصحيح They have been here.
- ✗ This is a good idea for me. → الصحيح This is a good idea for me.
- ✗ He is more taller than me. → الصحيح He is taller than me.

8 Choose the correct answer:

1. I usually _____ at 7 o'clock.
   a) wake up b) wakes up c) waking up d) woke up
2. She _____ in New York last year.
   a) live b) lived c) lives d) is living
3. I have _____ my homework.
   a) do b) did c) done d) doing
4. They used to _____ in a small house.
   a) lived b) live c) living d) lives
5. You should _____ a lot of water.
   a) drink b) drinks c) drinking d) drank
6. He said (that) he _____ tired.
   a) is b) was c) were d) be
7. _____ you help me?
   a) Are b) Do c) Does d) Is
8. It _____ rain later.
   a) might b) must c) should d) can

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

اقرأ السؤال جيدًا وحدد الزمن المطلوب.
وانتبه للكلمات الدالة لأنها تعطيك الإجابة.
تدرب كثيرًا على هذه النقاط فهي مفتاح التفوق.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

القواعد ليست صعبة إذا فهمتها جيدًا وطبقتها في جمل.
الممارسة المستمرة هي الطريق إلى النجاح في الإنجليزية.

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 8 — **Practice on Unit 6 – Part 1**

تدريبات على قواعد الوحدة السادسة (الجزء الأول)

تدريبات متنوعة ومتدرجة تغطي جميع قواعد الوحدة السادسة.
اقرأ التعليمات جيداً، ثم اختر الإجابة الصحيحة أو أعد كتابة الجملة كما هو مطلوب.

A Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. It was Ali _____ won the prize yesterday.
   a) who b) which c) that d) whose
2. I do _____ my homework every day.
   a) do b) does c) did d) doing
3. Never _____ I seen such a beautiful place.
   a) have b) has c) am d) is
4. She doesn't like coffee; _____, she prefers tea.
   a) however b) therefore c) because d) so
5. We studied hard, _____ we passed all our exams.
   a) but b) so c) although d) since
6. He left early _____ he could catch the train.
   a) so that b) because c) but d) although
7. It is in the park _____ we usually play.
   a) that b) where c) what d) which
8. Rarely _____ he speak in class.
   a) do b) does c) did d) is
9. You should study well _____ you can succeed.
   a) in order to b) so c) because d) although
10. She is rich; _____, she is not happy.
    a) so b) therefore c) but d) because

B Complete the sentences with the correct word(s) from the box:

(because – however – so that – although – firstly – therefore – in order to – never — who — however)

1. _____ , let's read the instructions carefully.
2. He was very tired, _____ he continued working.
3. I get up early _____ I can catch the bus.
4. She didn't study well; _____, she failed the test.
5. It was my brother _____ helped me yesterday.
6. We stayed at home _____ it was raining.
7. He didn't bring an umbrella; _____, he got wet.
8. _____ have I seen such a big building.
9. We worked hard; _____, we finished on time.
10. We should save water _____ protect our environment.

C Rewrite using the words in brackets: أعد كتابة الجملة مستخدماً الكلمات بين القوسين

1. My father bought me this phone. (It was)
   → _____
2. I like English very much. (do)
   → _____
3. He rarely comes late. (inversion)
   → _____
4. He was happy. He won the match. (so)
   → _____
5. We must study well. We can get good marks. (so that)
   → _____
6. She speaks French. She speaks German. (as well as)
   → _____
7. He didn't study. He failed the exam. (because)
   → _____
8. It is beautiful. I love this city. (that)
   → _____

D Correct the mistakes: صحح الأخطاء

1. It was in the library where we met yesterday. → _____
2. She does likes reading books. → _____
3. Never I been to Cairo. → _____
4. He didn't come because he was raining. → _____
5. We studied hard so we passed the test. → _____
6. It is I who helped him. → _____
7. Seldom he goes to the club. → _____
8. We will stay at home although it rained. → _____
9. He bought a new car in order he can travel. → _____
10. They were tired, but they continued working. → _____

E Combine the sentences using a suitable linking word:

1. It was late. We decided to go home. _____
2. He is clever. He is lazy. _____
3. We were hungry. We ate pizza. _____
4. I like football. I like basketball. _____
5. The weather was cold. We stayed inside. _____
6. She studied hard. She passed the exam. _____
7. He was ill. He didn't go to school. _____
8. They missed the bus. They took a taxi. _____
9. He likes tea. He doesn't like coffee. _____
10. We clean the park. We keep it beautiful. _____

F Mini Translation: ترجمة قصيرة

1. كان أحمد هو الذي بالجائزة. → _____
2. لا أحب القهوة، أفضل الشاي. → _____
3. ندرس بجد حتى نحقق النجاح. → _____
4. كان الجو بارداً، ومع ذلك خرجنا للتنزة. → _____
5. نصل مبكراً إلى المدرسة حتى لا نتأخر. → _____

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ الجملة كاملة قبل الإجابة.
- ✓ ركز على أدوات الربط لأنها تغير المعنى.
- ✓ في أسئلة إعادة الصياغة، احرص على استخدام المعنى الصحيح.
- ✓ تأكد من ترتيب الكلمات في جمل التوكيد والانقلاب.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

قواعد الوحدة السادسة تساعدك على
الكتابة الواضحة، والتعبير القوي، والحصول على أعلى الدرجات
في أسئلة القطعة واعادة الصياغة والكتابة.

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 9

Practice on Unit 6 – Part 2

تدريبات متقدمة مل قواعد قواعدة السادسة (الجزء الثاني)

تدريبات شاملة ومتقدمة تشمل جميع قواعد الوحدة السادسة.
اقرأ التعليمات جيداً، ثم أجب بدقة واهتمام لتحصل على أعلى الدرجات.

A Rewrite the following using cleft sentences:
أعد كتابة الجمل الآتية مستخدماً جمل جمل التوكيد

1. Ali helped me yesterday.
   → _____
2. She is reading an interesting novel.
   → _____
3. We met the ambassador last week.
   → _____
4. My brother fixed the computer.
   → _____
5. They won the match by one goal.
   → _____

B Emphatic Do / Does / Did – Rewrite using emphasis:
أعد كتابة الجمل مستخدماً (do / does) للتوكيد

1. I like English.
   → _____
2. She works hard.
   → _____
3. They will come tomorrow.
   → _____
4. He didn't know the answer.
   → _____
5. We have finished the project.
   → _____

C Rewrite using inversion: أعد كتابة الجمل باستخدام القلب

1. I have ever seen such a beautiful view.
   → _____
2. He rarely arrives late.
   → _____
3. She has almost finished her homework.
   → _____
4. They never complain.
   → _____
5. No sooner had he sat down than the phone rang.
   → _____

☆ **Remember:**
Never – Rarely – Seldom – Scarcely – Hardly – No sooner – No sooner than – Little – Only + Auxiliary + Subject

D Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I stayed at home _____ it was raining.
   a) because b) so c) although d) unless
2. He is rich, _____ he isn't happy.
   a) but b) so c) because d) therefore
3. We studied hard; _____ we passed the exam.
   a) because b) so c) although d) but
4. I will study hard _____ I can get high marks.
   a) so that b) because c) although d) but
5. She was tired, _____ she continued working.
   a) but b) however c) although d) because
6. First, we cleaned the room. _____, we did the homework.
   a) Then b) Next c) After that d) Finally
7. This is a good idea _____ it is difficult.
   a) so b) because c) although d) therefore
8. I never _____ such a large crowd.
   a) see b) saw c) have seen d) seeing
9. It was the teacher _____ helped us.
   a) who b) which c) that d) whom
10. He didn't come _____ he was sick.
    a) because b) so c) although d) but

E Correct the mistakes: صحح الأخطاء

1. I went to the club but I was tired. → _____
2. She does like tea. → _____
3. He studied hard, because he passed. → _____
4. Never I see such a beautiful place. → _____
5. It's my brother who fixed the car. → _____
6. They bought a new car so they have money. → _____
7. We should save water, but to protect our environment. → _____
8. I will call you as soon as I will arrive. → _____
9. He more intelligent than his brother. → _____
10. He said that he happy. → _____

F Read and complete the paragraph with words from the box:
اقرأ الفقرة ثم أكملها بالكلمات المناسبة من الصندوق

(however – because – therefore – firstly – after that
so that – in addition – finally – although – who – never)

(1) _____, we should protect our environment. It is our duty (2) _____ we can live in a clean and safe place. Many people don't care about that; (3) _____ they throw rubbish anywhere. (4) _____ we must follow some simple steps. (5) _____, we should use less plastic. (6) _____, we should save water and electricity. (7) _____, we can plant more trees. (8) _____ we work together, we can make a big difference. (9) _____ it may be difficult, it is possible. We (10) _____ give up.

G Translate into English: ترجم إلى الإنجليزية

1. كان أحمد هو من بالجائزة. → _____
2. أنا حقاً أحب اللغة الإنجليزية. → _____
3. درست بجد حتى أنجح في الاختبار. → _____
4. لا أذهب إلى المدرسة بسبب المرض. → _____
5. وصلنا إلى المتحف، بعد ذلك شاهدنا المعروضات. → _____

H Rewrite using the word(s) in brackets: أعد كتابة الجملة مستخدماً الكلمة بين القوسين

1. He is very kind. He helps everyone. (so that)
   _____
2. I missed the bus. I was late. (because)
   _____
3. She is a good student. She gets high marks. (therefore)
   _____
4. I will revise my lessons. I can pass the test. (in order to)
   _____
5. He didn't go out. It was cold. (although)
   _____

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ السؤال جيداً وحدد المطلوب بدقة.
- ✓ انتبة لأدوات الربط، فهي مفتاح الإجابة الصحيحة.
- ✓ راجع قواعد الوحدة باستمرار، وتمرن على كل نوع سؤال.
- ✓ لا تتسرع في الإجابة وراجع ما كتبت.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية ☆

إتقان أدوات الربط، وجمل التوكيد، والقلب،
يمنحك قوة كبيرة في الكتابة والامتحانات.
تدرب بانتظام، وستجد نفسك دائماً في المقدمة!

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 10 — **Comprehensive Exercises on Unit 6**
تدريبات شاملة على قواعد الوحدة السادسة

تدريبات متنوعة على جميع قواعد الوحدة السادسة.
اقرأ التعليمات جيداً، ثم أجب بدقة واهتمام لتحصل على أعلى الدرجات.

A Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I have visited Luxor _____ last year.
   a) since b) for c) already d) yet
2. She didn't go to school _____ she was sick.
   a) because b) so c) although d) but
3. We are going to clean the park _____ Sunday.
   a) on b) at c) in d) by
4. He has been here _____ two hours.
   a) since b) for c) yet d) ago
5. They have finished their work, _____ they are very happy.
   a) so b) because c) but d) although
6. I usually wake up _____ six o'clock.
   a) on b) at c) in d) of
7. If it _____ tomorrow, we won't go out.
   a) will rain b) rains c) rain d) is raining
8. You should study hard _____ you can pass.
   a) so that b) although c) because d) however
9. He said that he _____ busy the day before.
   a) is b) was c) were d) be
10. I will call you _____ I arrive.
    a) when b) while c) as soon as d) after

B Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: أكمل الجمل بالكلمة المناسبة من بين القوسين

1. We have worked here _____ three years. (for / since)
2. She stayed at home _____ she had a cold. (because)
3. They will plant trees _____ the morning. (in)
4. I am looking forward to _____ you. (see)
5. He has already _____ his homework. (finish)
6. If you study well, you _____ pass the test. (will)
7. We didn't go out _____ it was raining. (because)
8. You should save water _____ protect our earth. (so that)
9. I woke up early, _____ I missed the bus. (but)
10. She said that she _____ to the park yesterday. (go)

C Do as shown between brackets: أعد كما هو مطلوب بين القوسين

1. I went to the library yesterday. (Make negative)
2. He has a new car. (Ask a question)
3. They are playing football now. (Make negative)
4. She didn't finish her work. (Make positive)
5. We will travel next week. (Ask a question)
6. He is taller than me. (Make comparative)
7. I have seen this movie before. (Ask a question)
8. They were tired yesterday. (Make negative)

D Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. visited / last / I / Luxor / year.
2. he / homework / finished / his / already / has.
3. didn't / because / the / we / go out / were / we / tired.
4. are / park / trees / they / in / going to / the / plant / the.
5. looking / I / forward / to / am / you / seeing.
6. at / the / I / up / usually / wake / six / o'clock.
7. if / will / it / rain / tomorrow / we / stay / at / home.
8. said / was / busy / the / that / he / day / before / the.

E Read and answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Last week, our school organized a clean-up campaign in the city park. We arrived at the park at 8 a.m. We picked up litter and planted some flowers. After that, we painted the fences and cleaned the benches. We were tired, but we were happy because we made our park beautiful. Many people thanked us for our hard work.

1. What did the students do last week?
2. What time did they arrive at the park?
3. What did they do after picking up litter?
4. How did the students feel at the end?
5. Did the people thank the students?

F Correct the mistakes: صحح الأخطاء

1. I didn't went to school yesterday. →
2. She have been here for two hours ago. →
3. They has finished their work already. →
4. We usually eat breakfast in seven o'clock. →
5. He said that he is busy yesterday. →
6. I am agree with you. →
7. If it will rain, we stay at home. →
8. You should study hard so that you can pass the test. →

G Choose the suitable response: اختر الرد المناسب

A	B
1. Can you help me?	a) Thank you very much!
2. What are your plans for the weekend?	b) Yes, I enjoy it a lot.
3. Where did you go last summer?	c) I went to Aswan with my family.
4. I'm so tired today.	d) Sure, I'll help you.
5. Congratulations! You passed.	e) I'm going to visit my grandparents.
6. Do you like reading?	f) I know, you worked hard.

Answers: 1 (.....) 2 (.....) 3 (.....) 4 (.....) 5 (.....) 6 (.....)

H Writing (Write a short paragraph of about 5 sentences) كتابة (اكتب فقرة قصيرة من 5 جمل تقريبا)

Write about a volunteer activity you did with your school.
(What you did – When – Where – How you felt)

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ كل سؤال جيدًا قبل الإجابة.
- ✓ ركز على الكلمات الدالة على الزمن والربط.
- ✓ تدرب على كتابة الجمل الصحيحة بترتيب الكلمات.
- ✓ راجع قواعد الوحدة باستمرار.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

التمرين المستمر هو سر التفوق!
افهم التعاعدة جيدًا . وتدرّب عليها، وستتمكن من حل أي سؤال بسهولة وثقة.

★ Making a Difference ★

صنع فرق

Lesson 11 — **Mixed Practice (Units 1–6)**
تدريبات عامة على جميع قواعد الوحدات ١–٦

تدريبات شاملة ومتنوعة على أهم قواعد اللغة التي تعلمناها في الوحدات الست.
اقرأ التعليمات جيداً، ثم أجب بدقة واهتمام لتحصول على أعلى الدرجات.

A Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I (have / has / had) a new laptop since last week.
2. She usually (go / goes / going) to school by bus.
3. They (were / was / are) very happy yesterday.
4. We (have visited / visited / visit) the museum three times.
5. If it (rain / rains / rained) tomorrow, we will stay at home.
6. He is (as tall as / taller than / the tallest) his brother.
7. She said that she (will / would / can) help me.
8. By next year, I (will finish / will have finished / finish) my project.
9. You should (save / saving / saved) money.
10. I (don't like / didn't like / doesn't like) coffee.

B Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets:
أكمل الجمل مستخدماً الشكل الصحيح من الفعل بين القوسين

1. I (study) _____ English every day.
2. She (not finish) _____ her homework yet.
3. They (go) _____ to the cinema last Friday.
4. We (visit) _____ our grandparents next week.
5. If you (heat) _____ ice, it (melt) _____ .
6. He said that he (be) _____ tired.
7. At 8 o'clock tomorrow, I (have) _____ a test.
8. By the time we arrived, the train (leave) _____ .
9. You must (wear) _____ a seat belt.
10. I (read) _____ this book since morning.

C Do as shown between brackets: أعد كتابة الجملة كما هو مطلوب بين القوسين

1. She is reading a book. (Make negative)
   → _____
2. He played football yesterday. (Ask a question)
   → _____
3. They have already eaten lunch. (Make negative)
   → _____
4. I will call you as soon as I arrive. (Make question)
   → _____
5. He is taller than me. (Make comparative)
   → _____
6. We are going to clean the room. (Make negative)
   → _____
7. She said, "I am happy." (Change into reported speech)
   → She said that _____
8. I have seen this film before. (Make question)
   → _____

D Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. yesterday / the match / won / our team / .
   → _____
2. I / a new car / bought / last month / .
   → _____
3. she / study / doesn't / at night / .
   → _____
4. by 2027 / will have / graduated / I / .
   → _____
5. if / study hard / you / will pass / the test / .
   → _____
6. he / playing football / is / now / .
   → _____
7. at 7 o'clock / we / leave / tomorrow / will / .
   → _____
8. that / she / the truth / told / .
   → _____

E Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Last summer, our family went to Aswan. We stayed there for five days. We visited the High Dam and Philae Temple. We went on a boat trip on the Nile. The weather was hot, but we enjoyed it. My father took many photos. We also tried some delicious food. It was a wonderful vacation and we plan to go again next year.

1. Where did the family go last summer? _____
2. How long did they stay in Aswan? _____
3. What places did they visit? _____
4. What did they do on the Nile? _____
5. Did they enjoy the vacation? _____

F Complete using the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:
أكمل مستخدماً الشكل الصحيح للكلمة بين القوسين

1. She is a very _____ girl. (help)
2. This is the most _____ movie I have ever seen. (excite)
3. He has a _____ car than before. (big)
4. It was a very _____ day, so we stayed inside. (rain)
5. I felt _____ after my long walk. (tire)
6. We need to find a _____ solution to this problem. (create)
7. The book is _____ of 20 chapters. (consist)
8. He is one of the most _____ students in the class. (intelligent)

G Choose the suitable response: اختر الرد المناسب

A	B
1. Can you help me?	a) Great! Congratulations!
2. What are you going to do?	b) I'm going to visit my uncle.
3. I passed the test!	c) Yes, I love it.
4. I'm so tired.	d) Sure, what do you need?
5. Do you like hiking?	e) You should have a rest.

Answers: 1 (.....) 2 (.....) 3 (.....) 4 (.....) 5 (.....)

H Writing الكتابة

Write a short paragraph (about 6 sentences) about
" My School " using the following words:
اكتب فقرة قصيرة (حوالي ٦ جمل) عن " مدرستي " مستخدماً الكلمات التالية:
(big – classes – teachers – subjects – activities – happy)

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ السؤال بعناية وركز على الكلمات المفتاحية.
- ✓ لا تتعجل في الإجابة، وخطط لوقتك جيداً.
- ✓ راجع جميع الإجابات قبل تسليم ورقة الامتحان.
- ✓ التدريب المستمر هو سر النجاح والتفوق.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

الممارسة اليومية تجعلك أفضل يوماً بعد يوم.
لا تخف من الأخطاء، فهي طريقك للتعلم.
ثق بنفسك، وأنت قادر على صنع فرق كبير.

★ Comprehensive Exercises ★

تدريبيات شاملة على جميع الوحدات

Section 1 Choose the correct answer اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

Pages 63–65 (الصفحات 63 – 65)

تدريبيات على جميع قواعد الوحدتين الأولى والثانية.
اقرأ الأسئلة جيداً ، ثم اختـر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين الاختيارات الأربعة.

الوحدة الأولى والثانية

1. I usually _____ up at 6 o'clock every day.
a) get b) gets c) getting d) got

2. She is _____ a book now.
a) reading b) reads c) read d) to read

3. We _____ to school by bus.
a) go b) goes c) going d) went

4. They _____ their homework every evening.
a) do b) does c) doing d) did

5. He _____ a shower at the moment.
a) take b) takes c) is taking d) took

6. I _____ my keys. I can't find them.
a) lose b) lost c) am losing d) have lost

7. Look! The baby _____.
a) sleeps b) is sleeping c) sleep d) sleeping

8. He _____ English since 2018.
a) study b) studied c) has studied d) studies

9. We _____ dinner yet.
a) didn't have b) haven't had c) don't have d) hasn't had

10. I have _____ to London twice.
a) go b) went c) gone d) going

11. They _____ a new house last year.
a) buy b) buys c) bought d) buying

12. She _____ here since morning.
a) is b) are c) am d) has been

13. My brother _____ TV every night.
a) watch b) watches c) is watching d) watched

14. We _____ this movie before.
a) see b) saw c) have seen d) seeing

15. I'm tired. I _____ all day.
a) study b) studied c) have studied d) have been studying

16. By next month, I _____ my project.
a) finish b) will finish c) have finished d) finished

17. When I arrived, the train _____.
a) leaves b) left c) is leaving d) had left

18. If it _____ tomorrow, we will stay at home.
a) rain b) rains c) will rain d) is raining

19. You should _____ more water.
a) drink b) drinks c) drinking d) drank

20. She is good at _____.
a) sings b) singing c) sing d) to sing

21. I wish I _____ taller.
a) am b) was c) were d) be

22. He is one of the best players _____ I know.
a) who b) which c) whose d) where

23. This is the man _____ helped me yesterday.
a) who b) which c) whose d) when

24. She has a pen, _____?
a) does she b) doesn't she c) is she d) has she

25. Let's _____ to the club this evening.
a) to go b) go c) goes d) went

26. I enjoy _____ football with my friends.
a) play b) playing c) played d) to play

27. He didn't _____ late yesterday.
a) sleep b) slept c) sleeping d) sleeps

28. We have lived in this town _____ five years.
a) since b) for c) ago d) just

29. She usually _____ lunch at 1 o'clock.
a) have b) has c) having d) had

30. He _____ his car last week.
a) wash b) washes c) washed d) washing

31. I've never _____ such a beautiful place.
a) see b) saw c) seen d) seeing

32. They will come _____ they finish their work.
a) when b) while c) before d) after

33. We have to _____ our homework.
a) do b) doing c) did d) done

34. I _____ my grandparents last weekend.
a) visit b) visited c) have visited d) visiting

35. She hasn't _____ her room yet.
a) clean b) cleaned c) cleaning d) to clean

36. Listen! The phone _____.
a) rings b) is ringing c) ring d) ringing

37. He is used to _____ early.
a) get up b) gets up c) getting up d) got up

38. I don't mind _____ you.
a) help b) helping c) to help d) helped

39. He was born _____ 2009.
a) on b) in c) at d) by

40. They are planning _____ a trip next month.
a) take b) taking c) to take d) took

41. Don't forget _____ your homework.
a) do b) doing c) to do d) done

42. I wish I _____ there now.
a) am b) was c) were d) be

43. This is the book _____ I bought yesterday.
a) who b) which c) where d) that

44. You mustn't _____ in the street.
a) play b) playing c) to play d) played

45. He said that he _____ busy then.
a) is b) was c) has been d) will be

46. If I _____ rich, I would help the poor.
a) am b) was c) were d) be

47. Could you please _____ the window?
a) open b) opens c) opening d) opened

48. She would like _____ a teacher.
a) be b) to be c) being d) been

49. We _____ the train when it started to rain.
a) catch b) caught c) have caught d) will catch

50. He has two brothers, _____?
a) hasn't he b) does he c) don't he d) isn't he

★ Comprehensive Exercises ★

تدريبيات شاملة على جميع الوحدات

Section 1 Choose the correct answer اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

Pages 63–65 (الصفحات 64 – 65)

تدريبيات على جميع قواعد الوحدتين الثالثة والرابعة.
اقرأ الأسئلة جيداً ، ثم اختـر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين الاختيارات الأربعة.

الوحدة الثالثة والرابعة

1. If I _____ rich, I would buy a big house.
   a) am b) was c) were d) be
2. She is interested _____ music.
   a) in b) on c) at d) for
3. We have already _____ our lunch.
   a) eat b) ate c) eaten d) eats
4. I _____ this game since I was a kid.
   a) play b) plays c) have played d) was playing
5. By the time we arrived, the movie _____.
   a) started b) has started c) had started d) starts
6. I wish I _____ better at English.
   a) am b) was c) were d) be
7. You should _____ your homework on time.
   a) do b) did c) have done d) doing
8. He told me that he _____ to Cairo.
   a) goes b) went c) has gone d) had gone
9. She will call you as soon as she _____ home.
   a) gets b) get c) got d) getting
10. If it _____ tomorrow, we will stay at home.
    a) rain b) rains c) rained d) will rain
11. I would travel more if I _____ more money.
    a) have b) had c) will have d) has
12. The book _____ by a famous writer.
    a) write b) wrote c) is written d) writes
13. They were watching TV when the light _____.
    a) go b) goes c) went d) gone
14. I prefer tea _____ coffee.
    a) to b) than c) with d) for
15. We mustn't waste _____.
    a) time b) times c) timed d) timing
16. He is the boy _____ won the prize.
    a) who b) which c) whose d) where
17. It's the first time I _____ to the sea.
    a) go b) went c) have gone d) am going
18. You'd better _____ early.
    a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) left
19. I have never _____ such a beautiful place.
    a) see b) saw c) seen d) seeing
20. She has been _____ for two hours.
    a) sleep b) sleeps c) sleeping d) slept
21. He _____ football every Saturday.
    a) play b) plays c) is playing d) played
22. If I _____ you, I would go to the doctor.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
23. They asked me where I _____ from.
    a) am b) is c) are d) was
24. I don't mind _____ helping you.
    a) to b) in c) of d) about
25. We stayed at home because it _____ heavily.
    a) rain b) rains c) was raining d) rained
26. He said that he _____ his homework.
    a) finished b) finishes c) has finished d) had finished
27. I will phone you as soon as I _____ there.
    a) arrive b) arrived c) will arrive d) am arriving
28. This is the house _____ my father built.
    a) who b) which c) where d) whose
29. She is too tired _____ continue working.
    a) to b) for c) with d) at
30. If they _____ earlier, they would have caught the bus.
    a) come b) came c) will come d) coming
31. We used to _____ in the street when we were children.
    a) play b) playing c) played d) to play
32. It's high time we _____ our studies.
    a) started b) start c) starts d) starting
33. The car _____ by my brother yesterday.
    a) wash b) washes c) washed d) is washed
34. I haven't _____ him since last week.
    a) see b) saw c) seen d) seeing
35. I'd rather _____ at home today.
    a) stay b) staying c) stayed d) to stay
36. He has been a teacher _____ five years.
    a) since b) for c) ago d) in
37. The letter _____ when I opened the door.
    a) arrive b) arrives c) arrived d) has arrived
38. If you heat ice, it _____.
    a) melt b) melts c) is melt d) melting
39. I wish we _____ more time.
    a) have b) had c) has d) having
40. She reported that she _____ lost her keys.
    a) has b) have c) had d) is
41. I am looking forward to _____ you.
    a) see b) saw c) seeing d) sees
42. You should be careful _____ you cross the street.
    a) when b) while c) as d) before
43. They advised me _____ a doctor.
    a) to see b) seeing c) saw d) see
44. It took him an hour _____ the problem.
    a) solve b) to solve c) solved d) solving
45. He is proud _____ his work.
    a) at b) for c) of d) to
46. By next week, we _____ the project.
    a) finish b) will finish c) have finished d) finishing
47. I can't go out. I _____ my homework.
    a) do b) did c) am doing d) have done
48. She is the girl _____ helped me yesterday.
    a) who b) which c) whose d) where
49. He acted as if he _____ everything.
    a) knew b) knows c) know d) knowing
50. It's important _____ enough water every day.
    a) to drink b) drink c) drinking d) drinks

★ Comprehensive Exercises ★

تدريبيات شاملة على جميع الوحدات

Section 3 Choose the correct answer اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

Pages 65 – 66 (الصفحات 65 – 66)

تدريبيات شاملة ومتنوعة على جميع قواعد الوحدة الخامسة والسادسة.
اقرأ الأسئلة جيداً ، ثم اختـر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين الاختيارات الأربعة.

Unit 5 & Unit 6 (الوحدة الخامسة والسادسة)

1. I have never _____ such a beautiful place before.
a) see b) saw c) seen d) seeing
2. She has already _____ her lunch.
a) eat b) ate c) eaten d) eating
3. By the time we arrived, the movie _____.
a) starts b) started c) has started d) had started
4. I wish I _____ taller.
a) am b) was c) were d) be
5. If I were you, I _____ him the truth.
a) tell b) told c) will tell d) would tell
6. She said that she _____ to Paris the next week.
a) goes b) will go c) is going d) was going
7. He is used to _____ up early.
a) get b) getting c) got d) gets
8. We didn't go out because it _____ heavily.
a) rain b) rains c) was raining d) had rained
9. If it _____ tomorrow, we will stay at home.
a) will rain b) rains c) is raining d) rain
10. I have lived in this city _____ 2019.
a) since b) for c) in d) by
11. She wishes she _____ a doctor.
a) is b) were c) was d) be
12. If you hurry, you _____ the bus.
a) miss b) will miss c) are missing d) missed
13. He said that he _____ his homework.
a) finishes b) finished c) will finish d) had finished
14. I prefer tea _____ coffee.
a) more than b) than c) to d) over
15. This is the most interesting book _____ I have ever read.
a) who b) that c) which d) where
16. She is the girl _____ helped me yesterday.
a) who b) whom c) which d) whose
17. We were very tired, _____ we continued our work.
a) but b) so c) because d) or
18. If I _____ rich, I would help the poor.
a) am b) was c) were d) be
19. He suggested _____ to the park.
a) go b) going c) to go d) went
20. I have been _____ this book for two hours.
a) read b) reading c) reads d) to read
21. She asked me _____ I could help her.
a) that b) if c) whether d) what
22. The little boy is old enough _____ to school.
a) go b) going c) to go d) went
23. We had better _____ our homework now.
a) do b) doing c) to do d) did
24. I wish they _____ here now.
a) are b) were c) is d) be
25. He can't find his keys _____.
a) anywhere b) somewhere c) everywhere d) nowhere
26. By the time you call me, I _____.
a) will sleep b) will be sleeping c) am sleeping d) sleep
27. I _____ my keys. I can't find them.
a) lose b) am losing c) have lost d) lost
28. If I had more time, I _____ more books.
a) read b) would read c) will read d) reading
29. Do you mind _____ the window?
a) open b) opens c) opening d) opened
30. She is one of the students _____ passed the test.
a) who b) which c) whom d) whose
31. We will go on a picnic unless it _____.
a) rain b) rains c) is raining d) rained
32. He has a car _____ is very fast.
a) who b) that c) which d) where
33. If I study hard, I _____ a good mark.
a) get b) got c) will get d) would get
34. They advised me _____ early.
a) to leave b) leaving c) leave d) left
35. This is the best lesson _____ I have ever had.
a) who b) which c) that d) where
36. I wish I _____ swim.
a) can b) could c) will d) am
37. He prefers playing football _____ watching TV.
a) than b) to c) more than d) over
38. He suggested _____ a short break.
a) take b) to take c) taking d) took
39. If she _____ harder, she will pass the exam.
a) study b) studies c) will study d) studied
40. I have never _____ such a good movie.
a) see b) saw c) seen d) seeing
41. They said that they _____ the next day.
a) leave b) will leave c) are leaving d) left
42. If I were a bird, I _____ fly.
a) can b) could c) will d) am
43. He is too tired _____ run.
a) to b) for c) so that d) such as
44. She said that she _____ been to Egypt before.
a) has b) have c) had d) having
45. I wish I _____ my homework yesterday.
a) do b) did c) had done d) doing
46. If you heat ice, it _____.
a) melt b) melts c) will melt d) melted
47. He is the man _____ I saw yesterday.
a) who b) which c) whom d) whose
48. We will watch the match as soon as we _____.
a) arrive b) arrived c) will arrive d) are arriving
49. She has already _____ the room.
a) clean b) cleaned c) cleaning d) is cleaning
50. I wish you _____ here with me.
a) are b) were c) is d) be

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ الجملة كلها قبل ختيار الإجابة.
- ✓ ركز على الكلمات الدالة على الزمن والشروط.
- ✓ انتبه للفروق بين for – since / such – since ، if.
- ✓ استبعد الإجابات الخاطئة لتركيز على الصحيحة.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

التدريب المستمر هو سر التفوق!
كل سؤال تحله اليوم يقربك خطوة من النجاح في الامتحان.
راجع – تدرب – طبق ما تعلمته بكل تركيز وثقة.

★ Comprehensive Exercises ★

تدريبات شاملة على جميع الوحدات

Section 4 **Grammar in Context** قواعد اللغة في سياق

Pages 66 – 67 (الصفحات 66 – 67)

اقرأ القطعة التالية ثم اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين الاختيارات.

Last summer, my family and I (1) _____ to Alexandria. We stayed there for a week. The weather was beautiful, so we (2) _____ to the beach every day. My father (3) _____ a lot of photos, while my mother (4) _____ good books. In the evenings, we (5) _____ in restaurants and (6) _____ delicious seafood. One day, we (7) _____ a boat trip and (8) _____ the island of Pharos. I really (9) _____ the trip because I (10) _____ many new things about the history of Alexandria.

مفردات مهمة

- stay: يقيم
- weather: طقس
- beautiful: جميل
- seafood: مأكولات بحرية
- boat trip: رحلة بالقارب
- island: جزيرة
- history: تاريخ

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من بين (a – b – c)

1. My family and I (1) _____ to Alexandria last summer.
   a) go b) went c) going d) gone
2. We (2) _____ to the beach every day.
   a) go b) went c) goes d) going
3. My father (3) _____ a lot of photos.
   a) take b) took c) takes d) taking
4. My mother (4) _____ good books.
   a) read b) reading c) reads d) is reading
5. In the evenings, we (5) _____ in restaurants.
   a) eat b) eating c) ate d) eaten
6. We (6) _____ delicious seafood.
   a) eat b) eating c) ate d) eaten
7. One day, we (7) _____ a boat trip.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
8. We (8) _____ the island of Pharos.
   a) visit b) visited c) visits d) visiting
9. I really (9) _____ the trip.
   a) enjoy b) enjoyed c) enjoys d) enjoying
10. I (10) _____ many new things about the history of Alexandria.
    a) learn b) learned c) learning d) have learned

B Choose the correct meaning of the underlined word: اختر المعنى الصحيح للكلمة التي تحتها خط

1. The <u>weather</u> was beautiful.
   a) مكان b) زمن c) طقس d) لعبة
2. They enjoyed delicious <u>seafood</u>.
   a) قاكهة b) خضروات c) مأكولات بحرية d) حلويات
3. We took a <u>boat trip</u> to the island.
   a) رحلة جوية b) رحلة بالحافلة c) رحلة بالقارب d) رحلة بالدراجة
4. I <u>learned</u> many new things.
   a) شاهدت b) تعلمت c) اشتريت d) لعبت
5. Alexandria has a long <u>history</u>.
   a) قصة b) تاريخ c) صورة d) كتاب
6. We <u>stayed</u> there for a week.
   a) زرنا b) لعبنا c) مكثنا d) نامنا
7. He took a lot of <u>photos</u>.
   a) رسائل b) صور c) قصص d) فيديوهات
8. The <u>island</u> of Pharos is famous.
   a) صحراء b) جبل c) جزيرة d) وادي
9. They <u>ate</u> delicious seafood.
   a) اشتروا b) شربوا c) أكلوا d) طبخوا
10. The <u>trip</u> was amazing.
    a) البيت b) الرحلة c) المدرسة d) الحديقة

C Answer the following questions: أجب عن الأسئلة التالية

1. Where did the writer go last summer? _____
2. How was the weather? _____
3. What did the father do? _____
4. What did the family do in the evenings? _____
5. Why did the writer enjoy the trip? _____

D Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences: رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل مفيدة

1. Alexandria / last summer / we / to / went / .
2. was / the / beautiful / weather / .
3. a / took / lot / of / my father / photos / .
4. read / good / my mother / books / .
5. we / in / ate / restaurants / delicious seafood / .
6. we / a / boat trip / had / .
7. visited / of Pharos / we / the island / .
8. enjoyed / the trip / I / really / .
9. learned / new / many / things / I / .
10. Alexandria / a long / has / history / .

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ القطعة كلها مرة واحدة لتفهم الفكرة العامة.
- ✓ ركز على زمن الفعل والسياق قبل اختيار الإجابة.
- ✓ استبعد الإجابات الخاطئة؛ ثم اختر الأفضل.
- ✓ تدرب يومياً على القطع والقواعد في سياق.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

القواعد تصبح سهلة عندما تراها في جمل حقيقية.
السياق يساعدك على اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة بسرعة وثقة.
كل يوم حل تمريناً جديداً... وسترى الفرق في مستواك.

★ Comprehensive Exercises ★

تدريبات شاملة على جميع الوحدات

Section 5 **Rewrite** **إعادة الصياغة**

Pages 67 – 68 (الصفحات 67 – 68)

اقرأ الجمل التالية ثم أعد كتابتها باستخدام الكلمة أو الكلمات بين القوسين دون تغيير المعنى.

A Use the word(s) in brackets to make a correct sentence.

استخدم الكلمة أو الكلمات بين القوسين لتكوين جملة صحيحة.

1. I usually go to school at 7 o'clock. (usually)
2. They visited their grandparents last Friday. (visited)
3. He is reading a book now. (reading)
4. We have lived in this city for five years. (since)
5. My brother plays football every weekend. (played)
6. I don't have a laptop. (haven't)
7. She is waiting for her friend. (waiting)
8. They finished their homework an hour ago. (ago)
9. We will go to the club tomorrow. (going)
10. He has been to Dubai twice. (been)

B Rewrite using (used to / didn't use to).

أعد الصياغة باستخدام (used to / didn't use to)

1. I played computer games when I was younger.
2. We didn't eat fast food in the past.
3. She listened to the radio every evening.
4. They didn't have many cars in the past.
5. He lived in a small village when he was a child.
6. I didn't like vegetables before.
7. People traveled by buses in the past.
8. We didn't have the Internet many years ago.
9. She studied hard when she was at school.
10. They didn't go to the cinema last year.

C Rewrite using (so / such).

أعد الصياغة باستخدام

1. It was a difficult test.
2. He is a nice boy.
3. It was a hot day.
4. She is a beautiful girl.
5. They are interesting books.
6. It was a heavy bag.
7. He is a successful man.
8. The soup is delicious.
9. It was a useful lesson.
10. She is a clever student.

D Rewrite using (because / so).

أعد الصياغة باستخدام (because / so)

1. It was raining. We stayed at home.
2. He was tired. He went to bed early.
3. She is rich. She can buy that car.
4. We missed the bus. We got up late.
5. He is very busy. He doesn't have free time.
6. You didn't study. You failed the test.
7. It was cold. We wore our jackets.
8. They worked hard. They won the match.
9. She didn't eat breakfast. She felt hungry.
10. It was late. We went home.

E Rewrite using (if).

أعد الصياغة باستخدام

1. You heat water, it boils.
2. I will call you, I arrive.
3. It rains, we will stay at home.
4. She won't pass, she studies hard.
5. We will go to the beach, the weather is nice.
6. You don't hurry, you will miss the train.
7. He will be happy, you help him.
8. We will have a picnic, the day is sunny.
9. You eat too much, you will feel sick.
10. They will be late, they don't leave now.

F Put the words in brackets in the correct form.

ضع الكلمات بين القوسين في الشكل الصحيح.

1. My father ..... (work) in a bank.
2. They ..... (not / go) to the party yesterday.
3. She ..... (study) English every day.
4. He ..... (be) in Cairo since last week.
5. We ..... (watch) a movie now.
6. I ..... (finish) my homework an hour ago.
7. They ..... (visit) their uncle tomorrow.
8. He ..... (not / have) a car.
9. If I ..... (be) rich, I would help the poor.
10. She ..... (use) to live in Aswan.

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ الجملة جيداً لتفهم المطلوب.
- ✓ احرص على استخدام التوقيت الصحيح.
- ✓ تأكّد من عدم تغيير معنى الجملة.
- ✓ راجع القواعد قبل حل أي سؤال.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

إعادة الصياغة من أهم أسئلة الإمتحان.
كلما تدربت أكثر أصبحت أسرع وأدق.
ركز على الكلمات المفتاحية في الجملة.
المعنى أولاً ثم القاعدة.

★ Comprehensive Exercises ★

تدريبات شاملة على جميع الوحدات

Section 6 **Error Correction** تصحيح الأخطاء

Pages 68 – 69 (الصفحات 68 – 69)

اقرأ الجمل التالية، يوجد خطأ واحد في كل جملة..اكتشف الخطأ ثم اكتب الجملة صحيحة.

1. I usually go to school at 7 o'clock.
→ .....
2. She don't have a laptop.
→ .....
3. We was at the beach yesterday.
→ .....
4. He didn't went to the club.
→ .....
5. If it rains, we will stayed at home.
→ .....
6. They have lived here since 2018.
→ .....
7. She has went to the dentist.
→ .....
8. I wish I can swim very well.
→ .....
9. He play football every weekend.
→ .....
10. If I be you, I will study hard.
→ .....
11. We are used to get up early.
→ .....
12. He has been in London for two years.
→ .....
13. I didn't see him yesterday.
→ .....
14. She is waiting her friend now.
→ .....
15. If I have much time, I will travel.
→ .....
16. We will go to the cinema tomorrow.
→ .....
17. She finished her homework an hour ago.
→ .....
18. I am used to eat spicy food.
→ .....
19. If I was you, I will help him.
→ .....
20. We don't saw that movie last week.
→ .....
21. He has never been to Paris before.
→ .....
22. I wish I will be taller.
→ .....
23. They are playing basketball now.
→ .....
24. If he call me, I will tell him.
→ .....
25. She has lived in this city for 5 years.
→ .....
26. We didn't have the Internet last year.
→ .....
27. If it will rain, we will stay at home.
→ .....
28. He usually go to bed early.
→ .....
29. I will phone you as soon as I arrive.
→ .....
30. If I were a bird, I can fly.
→ .....

Exam Tip نصيحة للامتحان

- ✓ اقرأ الجملة بالكامل بهدوء.
- ✓ حدد نوع الخطأ (زمن – تركيب – أداة - تهجئة).
- ✓ تأكد من القاعدة المناسبة ثم صحح الخطأ.
- ✓ تدرب باستمرار لتجنب الأخطاء الشائعة.

Golden Note ملاحظة ذهبية

أغلب الأخطاء تكون في:

1- الأزمنة.

2- أدوات الربط. 3- النفي والسؤال.

4- أدوات الشرط. 5- تركيب الجملة.

69 التدريبات الشاملة (1)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer

1. The doctor ..... in this hospital for more than fifteen years.
   a) works b) has worked
   c) worked d) is working
2. My sister ..... all morning, so she needs some rest.
   a) studied b) has studied
   c) has been studying d) studies
3. The manager asked the employees ..... the meeting immediately.
   a) attend b) attended
   c) to attend d) attending
4. He said that he ..... the report the day before.
   a) finished b) had finished
   c) has finished d) finishes
5. That is the ..... building in the city.
   a) high b) higher
   c) highest d) highly
6. You ..... wear a seat belt while driving.
   a) must b) might
   c) can't d) needn't
7. She had her mobile phone ..... yesterday.
   a) repair b) repaired
   c) repairing d) repairs
8. The homework ..... before the teacher arrived.
   a) completed b) had completed
   c) had been completed d) completes
9. Ali asked me where I ..... from.
   a) come b) came
   c) am coming d) have come
10. By next month, we ..... our final project.
    a) finish b) have finished
    c) will have finished d) finished

B Correct the mistakes

1. She have lived in Luxor since 2015.
   .....
2. He asked me where did I live.
   .....
3. This is the more interesting lesson.
   .....
4. I got my car repair yesterday.
   .....
5. They has been working since eight o'clock.
   .....
6. You mustn't smoke here.
   .....
7. The work has finished already.
   .....
8. I have seen him yesterday.
   .....
9. If I will see him, I'll tell him.
   .....
10. She suggested to go to the cinema.
    .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets

1. Someone cleaned my office yesterday. (have)
   .....
2. "Where are you going?" she asked me. (reported question)
   .....
3. Perhaps he forgot the meeting. (might)
   .....
4. They started playing two hours ago and they are still playing. (have been)
   .....
5. Nobody in the class is more intelligent than Salma. (the most)
   .....
6. Somebody will repair our washing machine tomorrow. (get)
   .....
7. It isn't necessary for you to come early. (needn't)
   .....
8. I'm sure he isn't at home. (can't)
   .....

D Translation

① Translate into English

1. لقد كنت أتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية منذ خمس سنوات.
   .....
2. يجب علينا حماية البيئة من التلوث.
   .....
3. طلب المدير من الموظفين إنهاء العمل بسرعة.
   .....

② Translate into Arabic

1. Artificial intelligence has changed the way people work.
   .....
2. Good communication is one of the most important skills in modern life.
   .....
3. The students have been preparing for the final exam since last month.
   .....

Grammar Checklist ✓

- Present Perfect
- Present Perfect Continuous
- Reported Speech
- Reported Questions
- Reported Commands
- Modal Verbs
- Passive Voice
- Causative Verbs
- Comparisons
- Future Perfect
- Tenses Revision

راجع جيدًا ... وتوكّل على الله

70 التدريبيات الشاملة (2) Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. We ..... in this village since 2018.
   a) live b) lived c) have lived d) are living
2. By next year, I ..... my university course.
   a) finish b) will finish b) will finish
   c) will have finished d) finished
3. The children ..... in the garden for two hours.
   a) play b) played c) b) played
   c) have been playing d) are playing
4. My father had his car ..... last week.
   a) repair b) repaired c) repairing d) repairs
5. She said that she ..... to London the next day.
   a) will travel b) would travel c) travels
   c) travels d) has travelled
6. You ..... forget to lock the door.
   a) might b) must c) can d) needn't
7. This is the ..... movie I have ever seen.
   a) good b) better c) best d) well
8. He asked me where I ..... going.
   a) am b) was c) would d) were
9. The email ..... before I left the office.
   a) had sent b) was sent c) had been sent d) was sending
10. They suggested ..... a new library in our town.
    a) build b) building c) to build d) built
11. She is the most hardworking student in the class.
    She is ..... all the other students.
    a) as hardworking as b) more hardworking than
    c) the most hardworking d) less hardworking than
12. We mustn't ..... trees in the park.
    a) cut b) to cut c) cutting d) cutted
13. The match ..... by thousands of people.
    a) watched b) was watched c) has watched d) is watched
14. If I ..... you, I would study hard every day.
    a) was b) were c) am d) be
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... now.
    a) to leave b) leave c) leaving d) left

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She have been working here since two years. .....
2. He asked me where did I go. .....
3. We mustn't to waste water. .....
4. Ali has finished his homework already. .....
5. I got my watch repaired yesterday. .....
6. This is the more beautiful place I have ever visited. .....
7. They was playing when I arrived. .....
8. She suggested that we to go to the museum. .....
9. By next summer, they will have finish the project. .....
10. I have seen him last week. .....
11. If I were you, I'll study harder. .....
12. The door was locked by the guard. .....
13. Don't forget taking your books. .....
14. Somebody have taken my pen. .....
15. He denied to steal the money. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone stole my bag yesterday. (have)
   .....
2. "What are you doing?" she asked me. (reported question)
   .....
3. Perhaps he is at the office. (might)
   .....
4. They have been living in Cairo for ten years. (since)
   .....
5. Nobody in the class is taller than Ahmed. (the tallest)
   .....
6. We will finish the work before Friday. (by)
   .....
7. It isn't permitted to park here. (mustn't)
   .....
8. I am sure he is not sleeping now. (can't)
   .....
9. He started learning English five years ago.
   He still learns it. (has been)
   .....
10. She asked her brother to help her. (ask)
    .....
11. This exercise is easier than the previous one. (as ... as)
    .....
12. They are going to build a new hospital. (have)

D Translation

① Translate into English:

1. يجب علينا الحفاظ على نظافة الشوارع.
   .....
2. كنت أعمل على المشروع منذ الصباح.
   .....
3. طلبت أمي مني شراء بعض الخضروات من السوق.
   .....
4. يحلول العام القادم، سأكون قد أنهيت دراستي الثانوية.
   .....
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يساعد في تطوير الطب والتعليم.
   .....

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people have benefited from online education.
   .....
2. He suggested going on a camping trip in the desert.
   .....
3. It is important to reduce our use of plastic.
   .....
4. The report had been completed before the manager arrived.
   .....
5. If we save water, we will have a better future.
   .....

E Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is an ..... (engineer / engineered).
2. She showed great ..... (brave / bravery) in the situation.
3. The ..... (beauty / beautiful) of nature is amazing.
4. He is the most ..... (care / careful) student I know.
5. The doctor gave me some ..... (advice / advices).
6. This is the ..... (interesting / more interesting) book.
7. Ahmed is ..... (tall / taller) than his brother.
8. We should be ..... (patient / patiently) with children.
9. The movie was ..... (excite / exciting).
10. Please speak ..... (quiet / quietly) in the library.

F Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have lost my keys. (Make negative)
2. She has been cooking since morning. (Ask a question)
3. They finished the work yesterday. (Make negative)
4. He said, "I will visit my uncle tomorrow." (Reported speech)
5. "Be quiet," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must protect our environment. (Make question)
7. Mona is more intelligent than her sister. (Make comparative)
8. The letter was written by my father. (Change into passive)
9. Perhaps it will rain tomorrow. (Make negative)
10. I advise you to study regularly. (Make passive)
11. If I see him, I will tell him. (Type 1 Conditional)
12. By next year, we will have moved to a new house. (Ask a question)
13. He has already left the office. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to call me. (Change into passive)
15. She asked me where I was going. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't use your phone here. (Make question)
17. They started watching the movie two hours ago. (Use "have been")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure he will come. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would travel around the world. (Type 2 Conditional)

71 التدريبات الشاملة (3)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I ..... my English book since last week.
   a) read b) have read c) am reading d) have been reading
2. The boys ..... football when it started to rain.
   a) play b) are playing c) were playing d) have played
3. She asked me what time I ..... to the party.
   a) went b) go c) was going d) have gone
4. By the time you arrive, we ..... lunch.
   a) will have had c) would have d) have had
5. You ..... make noise in the library.
   a) must b) mustn't c) can d) needn't
6. My car ..... last week.
   a) is repaired b) was repaired c) were repaired d) repairs
7. This is ..... book I have ever read.
   a) more interesting b) most interesting
   c) the most interesting d) interesting
8. He said that he ..... the homework.
   a) has done b) had done c) did d) was doing
9. If I ..... you, I would apologise.
   a) am b) was c) were d) be
10. The work ..... before the guests arrived.
    a) has been done b) was done c) had been done d) is done
11. Ali ..... in Dubai for three years.
    a) lives b) has lived c) lived d) is living
12. She suggested ..... to the sea.
    a) to go b) going c) go d) went
13. It isn't necessary for you ..... early.
    a) arrive b) arriving c) to arrive d) arrived
14. I'm sure he ..... come late.
    a) can't b) must c) may d) might
15. My brother is ..... than me.
    a) tall b) taller c) the tallest d) more tall

B Correct the mistakes:

1. They has lived here since 2010. .....
2. He asked me where do I live. .....
3. This question is more easy than the last one. .....
4. I have finished my homework yesterday. .....
5. You mustn't have left your bag. .....
6. The letter has wrote by my friend. .....
7. Somebody stole my wallet last night. .....
8. She have been working since five o'clock. .....
9. I had my bike repair two days ago. .....
10. The match has started already. .....
11. If I will have time, I'll call you. .....
12. They suggested going to the park. .....
13. This is the most beautiful place I ever see. .....
14. By next year, we will have moved to a new house. .....
15. He told me that he was studying English. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone cleaned the room yesterday. (have)
2. "Where is your brother?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Perhaps they are at home. (might)
4. They started watching TV an hour ago and they are still watching. (have been)
5. Nobody in the team is better than Mohamed. (the best)
6. I will finish the project before Monday. (by)
7. Somebody will fix the computer tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring your books. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he isn't at the club. (can't)
10. She asked her teacher to explain the lesson. (ask)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have lost my pen. (Make negative)
2. They finished the project yesterday. (Make negative)
3. Mona is reading a story. (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I will help you." (Reported speech)
5. "Close the window," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must save water. (Make question)
7. He is taller than his brother. (Make comparative)
8. The film was exciting. (Make more exciting)
9. Perhaps it will rain tomorrow. (Make passive)
10. The car is being repaired now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would study harder. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next week, we will have finished the work. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to lock the door. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" she asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't cheat in the exam. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The museum was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure he will come soon. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would help the poor. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. يجب علينا استخدام التكنولوجيا بحكمة.
2. لقد كنت أعمل علي المشروع منذ أسبوعين.
3. طلب المدير من الموظفين إنهاء العمل قبل الساعة الخامسة.
4. ربما يزورنا خالي في الصيف القادم.
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يساعدنا في حل المشكلات.

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Good habits lead to a successful life.
2. She has been learning piano since she was seven.
3. The teacher asked the students to open their books.
4. Many animals are in danger because of pollution.
5. If we work together, we can achieve our goals.

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (help / helpful / helping)
2. This is one of the ..... films I have ever watched. (excite / exciting / excitement)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advise / advice / advisory)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... player in the team. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... that we won the match. (excite / exciting / excitement)
8. The ..... of the story is very interesting. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... park in our city. (beauty / beautiful / beautifully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our parents. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

72 التدريبات الشاملة (4)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد القتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. My uncle ..... in this company since 2010.
   a) works b) worked c) has worked d) is working
2. The students ..... for the exam all week.
   a) study b) have studied c) have been studying d) studied
3. The teacher asked us ..... our books.
   a) open b) to open c) opening d) opened
4. He said that he ..... to Egypt the week before.
   a) came b) comes c) had come d) has come
5. This is the ..... film I have ever seen.
   a) good b) better c) best d) more good
6. You ..... be careful when you cross the street.
   a) must b) needn't c) can't d) mustn't
7. She had her watch ..... yesterday.
   a) repairs b) repair c) repaired d) repairing
8. By the time we arrived, the bus ..... .
   a) leaves b) had left c) left d) was leaving
9. Ali asked me where I ..... then.
   a) am b) was c) would be d) were
10. They will have finished the project ..... next week.
    a) by b) until c) when d) while
11. He denied ..... the money.
    a) stealing b) steal c) stole d) to steal
12. I wish I ..... more time to study.
    a) have b) had c) will have d) would have
13. If I ..... rich, I would travel around the world.
    a) am b) were c) will be d) was
14. The news ..... on TV at the moment.
    a) is reported b) reports c) are reported d) reporting
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... early.
    a) to come b) comes c) coming d) came

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She has been to London last year. .....
2. He asked me where I am going. .....
3. You must to finish your homework. .....
4. I got my bike repaired two days ago. .....
5. This is more expensive than her bag. .....
6. They has finished the work already. .....
7. I have lived here since five years. .....
8. The match had started before we arrived. .....
9. If I will have money, I will buy a car. .....
10. She suggested to visit the museum. .....
11. The door was locked by a key. .....
12. He advised me not to be late. .....
13. Somebody have taken my notebook. .....
14. I am sure he can't be at home. .....
15. You shouldn't talking in the library. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone cleaned the window yesterday. (have)
2. "Where do you live?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Perhaps she is in the library. (might)
4. They started cooking an hour ago and they are still cooking. (have been)
5. Nobody in the team is more talented than Omar. (the most)
6. We will finish the project before Monday. (by)
7. Somebody will bring the documents tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to wait here. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he isn't watching TV now. (can't)
10. She asked her brother to help her. (ask)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have lost my wallet. (Make negative)
2. They finished the work at five o'clock. (Make negative)
3. Sara is reading a novel. (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I am very tired." (Reported speech)
5. "Don't make noise," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must protect our environment. (Make question)
7. He is taller than his friend. (Make comparative)
8. The movie is more interesting than the book. (Make more interesting)
9. Perhaps they will travel next summer. (Make passive)
10. The car is being washed now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I wouldn't smoke. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next year, we will have finished our studies. (Ask a question)
13. She has already submitted the report. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to call your mother. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" he asked. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't use your mobile in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure we will succeed. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would help the poor. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. يجب علينا العمل بجد لتحقيق أحلامنا.
2. كنت أعمل على المشروع منذ أسبوعين.
3. طلبت من المدير حضور الإجتماع غداً.
4. ربما يسافرون إلى أوروبا في الصيف القادم.
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يساعد في حل المشاكل.

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Pollution is one of the biggest problems in our world.
2. She has been learning English since she was young.
3. The teacher asked the students to open their books.
4. Many people will benefit from new technology.
5. If we work hard, we will achieve our goals.

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (help / helpful / helping)
2. This is one of the ..... places I have ever visited. (beautiful / more beautiful / most beautiful)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advice / advise / advising)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... player in the team. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... that we won the match. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is amazing. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... park in our city. (beauty / beautiful / beautifully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
11. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our parents. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

التدريبات الشاملة (5)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عيد القتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I ..... my grandmother since last summer.
   a) visit b) visited c) have visited d) am visiting
2. By the end of this year, I ..... my goal.
   a) achieve b) will achieve c) will have achieved d) achieved
3. He said that he ..... to Aswan the week before.
   a) went b) goes c) had gone d) has gone
4. This is one of the ..... experiences I have had.
   a) good b) better c) best d) the best
5. You ..... be late for school.
   a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) can't
6. My brother had his computer ..... yesterday.
   a) fix b) fixed c) fixing d) to fix
7. The children ..... in the park since morning.
   a) play b) have played c) have been playing d) played
8. The letter ..... before I arrived.
   a) had written b) had been written c) was written d) has written
9. Ali asked me where I ..... my keys.
   a) put b) had put c) was putting d) have put
10. They have already ..... their homework.
    a) finish b) finished c) finishing d) finishes
11. If I ..... you, I would study harder.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
12. He denied ..... anything wrong.
    a) do b) did c) done d) doing
13. We ..... to the station by the time the train left.
    a) arrived b) had arrived c) have arrived d) were arriving
14. She suggested ..... a doctor.
    a) to see b) seeing c) saw d) seen
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... now.
    a) to leave b) leaving c) leave d) left

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She has been to Egypt last year. .....
2. He asked me where do I live. .....
3. You must to finish your homework. .....
4. I got my watch repair yesterday. .....
5. This is more beautiful than her bag. .....
6. They have finished the exam already. .....
7. I have lived here since three years. .....
8. The match has began. .....
9. If I will see him, I'll call him. .....
10. He suggested to visit the museum. .....
11. The door was locked by a key. .....
12. She have been studying since morning. .....
13. Don't forget take your books. .....
14. Somebody has took my pen. .....
15. I am sure he is at home. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone stole my bike yesterday. (have)
2. "Why are you sad?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Maybe it will rain tomorrow. (might)
4. They started working an hour ago and they are still working. (have been)
5. Nobody in the class is smarter than Maged. (the smartest)
6. We will paint the walls before Friday. (by)
7. Somebody will fix our television tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring money. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he isn't in the garden. (can't)
10. She asked her teacher to help her. (ask)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I lost my keys. (Make negative)
2. They finished the project yesterday. (Make negative)
3. Mona is writing a letter. (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I will visit my uncle." (Reported speech)
5. "Don't be late," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must clean our classroom. (Make question)
7. He is younger than his brother. (Make comparative)
8. The film was more exciting than the book. (Make more exciting)
9. Perhaps he is at home. (Make passive)
10. The car is being washed now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would apologize. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next summer, we will have finished our studies. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to close the window. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" she asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't use your phone in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure he will come. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would travel around the world. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. لقد كنت أتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية منذ سنة 2019.
   .....
2. يجب علينا توفير المياه من أجل المستقبل.
   .....
3. طلبت من أخي أن يمر عليَّ بعد الانتهاء من عمله.
   .....
4. كان المتحف مغلقاً عندما وصلنا.
   .....
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي غير طريقة عمل الناس.
   .....

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people use the internet every day.
   .....
2. She has been practicing the piano since she was eight.
   .....
3. The teacher asked the students to study hard.
   .....
4. We should respect our parents.
   .....
5. If we save electricity, we will help our planet.

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... doctor in this hospital. (fame / famous / famously)
2. This is one of the ..... cities I have ever visited. (beauty / beautiful / beautifully)
3. She gave me some ..... before the exam. (advise / advice / advisory)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... student in our class. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... to win the competition. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is wonderful. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... the guitar. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... place I have ever seen. (beauty / beautiful / beautifully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was amazing. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our environment. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

التدريبات الشاملة (6)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The scientist ..... in this lab since 2015.
   a) works b) worked c) has worked d) is working
2. My sister ..... for the exam all day.
   a) studied b) has studied c) has been studying d) studies
3. He said that he ..... the book the day before.
   a) reads b) read c) had read d) has read
4. This is the ..... film I have ever watched.
   a) exciting b) more exciting c) most exciting d) excited
5. You ..... forget to take your umbrella.
   a) mustn't b) needn't c) can't d) shouldn't
6. She had her dress ..... last week.
   a) repair b) repaired c) repairing d) repairs
7. They ..... in Cairo since they were children.
   a) live b) have lived c) lived d) are living
8. The report ..... before the judge came.
   a) was finished b) is finished c) had been finished d) had finished
9. Ali asked me where I ..... my passport.
   a) put b) had put c) was putting d) have put
10. By next year, we ..... our new house.
    a) will finish b) will have finished c) have finished d) finished
11. He denied ..... the window.
    a) break b) breaking c) broke d) to break
12. I wish I ..... taller.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
13. If I ..... rich, I would travel around the world.
    a) am b) were c) was d) be
14. The match ..... by thousands of people.
    a) watched b) was watched c) is watched d) is watching
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... early.
    a) to come b) coming c) come d) came

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She have been to Aswan last summer. .....
2. He asked me where did I go. .....
3. You mustn't to smoke here. .....
4. I got my laptop repair yesterday. .....
5. This exercise is more easiest than the others. .....
6. They has already eaten. .....
7. I have seen him two days ago. .....
8. If I will see you, I will call you. .....
9. The homework has finished. .....
10. She suggested to visit the museum. .....
11. The door was locked by a key. .....
12. Somebody have taken my book. .....
13. I am sure he don't like cats. .....
14. Don't forget to take your bag. .....
15. This is the more beautiful place. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone cleaned the classroom yesterday. (have)
2. "What is your name?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Perhaps it will rain tomorrow. (might)
4. They started playing tennis three hours ago and they are still playing. (have been)
5. Nobody in this team is better than Mohamed. (the best)
6. I will send the email before noon. (by)
7. Somebody will repair our car tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring money. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he isn't in the office. (can't)
10. She asked her friend to help her. (ask)
11. We will finish the project before Friday. (by)
12. They will build a new bridge in this city. (have)
13. It's possible that he is at home. (might)
14. I wish I could speak French fluently. (If only)
15. She wants to become a doctor. (would like)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have left my notebook. (Make negative)
2. They have finished the test. (Make negative)
3. Where do you live?" (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I am watching TV." (Reported speech)
5. "Turn off the light," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We should protect wildlife. (Make question)
7. Omar is taller than his brother. (Make comparative)
8. This book is more interesting than that one. (Make more interesting)
9. Perhaps she will come tomorrow. (Make passive)
10. The car is being repaired. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would study harder. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By the end of this year, we will have finished our exams. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to close the door. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" she asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't use your phone in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure we will win. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would help the poor. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. لقد كنت أمارس الرياضة منذ أن كنت صغيرا. .....
2. يجب علينا تقليل استخدام البلاستيك لحماية البيئة. .....
3. طلب المعلم من الطلاب فتح كتبهم. .....
4. ربما يسافر أحمد إلى الخارج العام القادم. .....
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يغير طريقة حياتنا. .....

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people use social media every day. .....
2. She has been learning English since she was young. .....
3. The doctor asked the patient to take this medicine. .....
4. We should work hard to achieve our dreams. .....
5. If we save water, we will have enough for the future. .....

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (kind / kindly / kindness)
2. This is one of the ..... beaches I have ever seen. (beautiful / more beautiful / most beautiful)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advice / advise / advisory)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... student in our class. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... to win the competition. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is amazing. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... place I have ever visited. (peace / peaceful / peacefully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our teachers. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

75 التدريبات الشاملة (7)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عيد القتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. My father ..... in this school since 2008.
   a) teaches b) taught c) has taught d) is teaching
2. By next year, I ..... from this school.
   a) will graduate b) will have graduated c) graduate d) will be graduating
3. She said that she ..... her homework already.
   a) finished b) had finished c) was finishing d) finishes
4. This is the ..... movie I have ever seen.
   a) more exciting b) most exciting c) exciting d) very exciting
5. You ..... take photos here.
   a) mustn't b) can't c) needn't d) didn't have to
6. I had my bike ..... last week.
   a) repair b) repaired c) repairing d) repairs
7. The students ..... English for two hours.
   a) studied b) have studied c) have been studying d) study
8. The letter ..... before we left.
   a) was posted b) had posted c) had been posted d) posted
9. Ali asked me where I ..... my new laptop.
   a) put b) putted c) was putting d) have put
10. They suggested ..... a new hospital in the city.
    a) build b) building c) to build d) built
11. He denied ..... the window.
    a) break b) breaking c) broke d) to break
12. I wish I ..... you earlier.
    a) met b) have met c) had met d) meet
13. The news ..... on TV when I arrived.
    a) is reporting b) was reported c) were reported d) had reported
14. We ..... our teacher since this morning.
    a) didn't see b) haven't seen c) don't see d) hasn't seen
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... so fast.
    a) to run b) run c) running d) ran

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She has been to Paris last summer. .....
2. He asked me where I go. .....
3. You must not't be late. .....
4. I got my watch repair yesterday. .....
5. This exercise is the more difficult. .....
6. They has finished the work already. .....
7. I have lived here since 2020. .....
8. The match have started. .....
9. If I will know, I'll tell you. .....
10. He suggested go to the park. .....
11. The door was locked by the key. .....
12. Somebody have taken my phone. .....
13. She denied steal the money. .....
14. I am sure he don't like coffee. .....
15. Don't forget to fed the cat. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone cleaned the kitchen yesterday. (have)
2. "Where are you going?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Perhaps he is at the library. (might)
4. They started watching the movie two hours ago and they are still watching it. (have been)
5. Nobody in the team is younger than Youssef. (the youngest)
6. I will finish the report before Friday. (by)
7. Somebody will repair our computer tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring your books. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he isn't busy now. (can't)
10. She asked her friend to help her. (ask)
11. We will visit the museum next week. (in)
12. They have already eaten dinner. (yet)
13. It's possible that it will rain. (might)
14. I wish I could play football well. (if only)
15. She wants to be an engineer. (would like)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I lost my bag. (Make negative)
2. They finished the exam. (Make negative)
3. Where do you come from? (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I will call you tomorrow." (Reported speech)
5. "Don't make noise," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must use electricity carefully. (Make question)
7. Ahmed is as tall as his brother. (Make comparative)
8. The story is more exciting than that one. (Make more interesting)
9. Perhaps they are at home. (Make passive)
10. The car is being repaired now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would study harder. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next year, we will have finished the project. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to lock the door. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" he asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't eat in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure we will succeed. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would travel around the world. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. لقد كنت أتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية منذ ثلاث سنوات. .....
2. يجب علينا الحفاظ على نظافة الشوارع. .....
3. طلبت من أخي أن يساعدني في حل واجبي. .....
4. ربما يسافرون إلى الخارج العام القادم. .....
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يغير العديد من الوظائف. .....

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people use the internet every day. .....
2. He has been learning English since he was young. .....
3. The teacher asked the students to open their books. .....
4. We should respect our parents. .....
5. If we save water, we will have enough for the future. .....

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (kind / kindly / kindness)
2. This is one of the ..... places I have ever visited. (beautiful / beautifully / more beautiful)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advice / advise / advising)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... player in the team. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... to win the competition. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is amazing. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... park in our city. (beauty / beautiful / beautifully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our teachers. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

التدريبات الشاملة (8)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عيد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I ..... here since last September.
   a) study b) studied c) am studying d) have been studying
2. The workers ..... the road for two days.
   a) repair b) are repairing c) have repaired d) repaired
3. He said that he ..... his home the day before.
   a) left b) had left c) has left d) leaves
4. This is the ..... film I have ever seen.
   a) good b) better c) best d) more good
5. You ..... forget to lock the door.
   a) mustn't b) needn't c) can't d) shouldn't
6. My brother had his watch ..... yesterday.
   a) fix b) fixed c) fixing d) to fix
7. They ..... for the bus when it started to rain.
   a) wait b) were waiting c) had waited d) have waited
8. The letter ..... before I went to bed.
   a) arrived b) has arrived c) had arrived d) was arriving
9. Ali asked me where I ..... my holiday.
   a) spend b) spent c) am spending d) have spent
10. They have already ..... dinner.
    a) eat b) eaten c) ate d) eats
11. If I ..... richer, I would help poor people.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
12. He denied ..... the bike.
    a) steal b) stole c) stealing d) to steal
13. By next week, we ..... our plan.
    a) finish b) finished c) will finish d) will have finished
14. She suggested ..... to the seaside.
    a) go b) going c) to go d) went
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... early.
    a) to come b) comes c) coming d) came

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She have been to Alexandria last year. .....
2. He asked me where do I live. .....
3. You mustn't talk in the library. .....
4. I got my bike repair yesterday. .....
5. This is the most beautiful place I ever see. .....
6. They has already left. .....
7. I have lived here since 2018. .....
8. The match has started already. .....
9. If I will win, I'll be happy. .....
10. He suggested going to the cinema. .....
11. The door was locked by a key. .....
12. She have been studying since morning. .....
13. Don't forget taking your medicine. .....
14. I am sure he isn't in the office. .....
15. Somebody stole my wallet last night. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone cleaned the window yesterday. (have)
2. "What time do you get up?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Perhaps it will rain tomorrow. (might)
4. They started playing football two hours ago and they are still playing. (have been)
5. Nobody in the team is faster than Youssef. (the fastest)
6. I will finish the project before Friday. (by)
7. Somebody will repair our TV tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring your books. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he can't be at home. (can't)
10. She asked her teacher to help her. (ask)
11. We will visit the museum next week. (in)
12. I have already eaten lunch. (yet)
13. It's possible that he will come. (might)
14. I wish I could speak English fluently. (if only)
15. She wants to be a pilot. (would like)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have lost my keys. (Make negative)
2. They finished the project yesterday. (Make negative)
3. Where are you going? (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I will help you." (Reported speech)
5. "Don't be late," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must keep our city clean. (Make question)
7. Ahmed is taller than his brother. (Make comparative)
8. The story is more interesting than that one. (Make more interesting)
9. Perhaps it will rain tomorrow. (Make passive)
10. The car is being repaired now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would study harder. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next year, we will have finished our studies. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to submit the report. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" she asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't eat in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure we will succeed. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would travel around the world. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. لقد كنت أتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية منذ الطفولة.
.....
2. يجب علينا العمل بجد لتحقيق أحلامنا.
.....
3. طلب المدير من الموظفين إنهاء العمل قبل نهاية الأسبوع.
.....
4. ربما يسافر أبي إلى الخارج العام القادم.
.....
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يغير طريقة حياتنا.
.....

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people use smartphones every day.
.....
2. She has been learning English since she was young.
.....
3. The teacher asked the students to be quiet.
.....
4. We should save energy to protect our planet.
.....
5. If we study well, we will pass the exam.
.....

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (kind / kindly / kindness)
2. This is one of the ..... beaches I have ever seen. (beautiful / more beautiful / most beautiful)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advise / advice / advisory)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... player in the team. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... that we won the match. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is amazing. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... building in our city. (beauty / beautiful / beautifully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our parents. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

77 التدريبات الشاملة (9)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. My aunt ..... in Canada since 2012.
   a) lives b) lived c) has lived d) is living
2. By next year, I ..... my studies at the university.
   a) finish b) will finish c) will have finished d) am finishing
3. She asked me where I ..... my pen.
   a) put b) have put c) was putting d) had put
4. This is the ..... book I have ever read.
   a) good b) better c) best d) more good
5. You ..... speak loudly in the library.
   a) mustn't b) can't c) needn't d) don't have to
6. He had his car ..... last Monday.
   a) repair b) repaired c) repairing d) repairs
7. The match ..... before the rain started.
   a) finished b) had finished c) had been finished d) finishes
8. Ali said that he ..... to Paris the week before.
   a) goes b) English for five years before I moved to England.
10. a) study b) studied c) had studied d) was studying
    The teacher told the students c) not to use d) using
11. They have already ..... breakfast.
    a) eat b) ate c) eaten d) eating
12. If I ..... rich, I would buy a big house.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
13. He denied ..... the money.
    a) steal b) stealing c) stole d) to steal
14. The film is ..... than the book.
    a) more exciting b) most exciting c) exciting d) as exciting
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... to school early.
    a) to come b) comes c) coming d) come

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She has been in Cairo since three years. .....
2. He asked me where I live. .....
3. You mustn't to be late. .....
4. I got my watch repairing yesterday. .....
5. This is more beautiful than any other building. .....
6. They has finished the work already. .....
7. I have lived here for 2019. .....
8. If I were you, I will study hard. .....
9. The homework have finished. .....
10. He suggested to visit the museum. .....
11. The door are locked by a key. .....
12. Don't forget to feed the bird. .....
13. Somebody have taken my bag. .....
14. I am sure he doesn't at home. .....
15. She advised me to don't worry. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone broke the window yesterday. (have)
2. "How do you feel?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Perhaps he is busy now. (might)
4. They started working three hours ago and they are still working. (have been)
5. Nobody in the class is taller than Omar. (the tallest)
6. I will send the report before tomorrow. (by)
7. Somebody will clean the room tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring your lunch. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he isn't in the garden. (can't)
10. She asked her mother to help her. (ask)
11. We will finish the project before Friday. (by)
12. They have eaten lunch already. (yet)
13. It's possible that it will rain. (might)
14. I wish I could swim well. (if only)
15. She wants to be a teacher. (would like)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have lost my wallet. (Make negative)
2. They finished the exam. (Make negative)
3. Where do you live? (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I will help you." (Reported speech)
5. "Don't make noise," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must save water. (Make question)
7. Ahmed is taller than his brother. (Make comparative)
8. The story is more interesting than that one. (Make more interesting)
9. Perhaps it will rain. (Make passive)
10. The car is being repaired now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would apologize. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next year, we will have finished our studies. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to take your books. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" he asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't use your phone in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure we will succeed. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would travel around the world. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. لقد عاشت مع جدتها منذ أن كانت صغيرة. .....
2. يجب علينا توفير الطاقة للحفاظ على البيئة. .....
3. طلبت من أخي أن يساعدني في حل واجبي. .....
4. ربما يسافرون إلى الخارج العام القادم. .....
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يغير طريقة عملنا وحياتنا. .....

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people use social media every day. .....
2. She has been learning English since she was young. .....
3. The teacher asked the students to be quiet. .....
4. We should take care of our health. .....
5. If we work together, we will achieve our goals. .....

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (kind / kindly / kindness)
2. This is one of the ..... places I have ever visited. (beautiful / more beautiful / most beautiful)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advice / advise / advising)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... student in our class. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... that we won the match. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is amazing. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... place I have ever seen. (beauty / beautiful / beautifully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our parents. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

التدريبات الشاملة (10)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I ..... to the gym every morning.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. My brother ..... tennis since he was ten.
   a) plays b) played c) is playing d) has played
3. We ..... our project tomorrow.
   a) finish b) finishes c) will finish d) are finishing
4. She said that she ..... see the doctor.
   a) will b) would c) is going to d) has to
5. This is the most interesting book I ..... .
   a) read b) reads c) have read d) am reading
6. You ..... be quiet in the library.
   a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) should
7. My father had already ..... breakfast.
   a) eat b) ate c) eaten d) eating
8. The children ..... in the park when it started to rain.
   a) play b) were playing c) have played d) played
9. The letter ..... before I arrived.
   a) was written b) has written c) had been written d) wrote
10. Ali asked me where I ..... my keys.
    a) put b) had put c) was putting d) have put
11. By next week, we ..... our homework.
    a) finish b) will finish c) will have finished d) finished
12. If I ..... rich, I would help the poor.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
13. He denied ..... the truth.
    a) tell b) tells c) told d) telling
14. I wish I ..... better at English.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... so late.
    a) to stay b) staying c) stay d) stayed

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She has been to Luxor last winter. .....
2. He asked me where did I go. .....
3. You mustn't talking in the class. .....
4. I got my computer repair yesterday. .....
5. This is more delicious than the other cake. .....
6. They have finish the work already. .....
7. I have live here since 2021. .....
8. The match have started. .....
9. If I will see him, I'll tell him. .....
10. He suggested to visit the museum. .....
11. The door are locked by a key. .....
12. She have been studying since morning. .....
13. Don't forget to take your books. .....
14. Somebody have taken my notebook. .....
15. I am sure he doesn't at home. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone closed the window. (have)
2. "Where is your brother?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Maybe it will rain tomorrow. (might)
4. They started working five hours ago and they are still working. (have been)
5. Nobody in the team is taller than Samir. (the tallest)
6. I will send the email before noon. (by)
7. Somebody will fix our car tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring your bag. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he isn't in the office. (can't)
10. She asked her friend to help her. (ask)
11. We will finish the work before Friday. (by)
12. They have already eaten dinner. (yet)
13. It's possible that he will come. (might)
14. I wish I could speak French. (if only)
15. She wants to be a nurse. (would like)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have lost my ID card. (Make negative)
2. They finished the project. (Make negative)
3. Where are you going? (Ask a question)
4. He says, "I will help you." (Reported speech)
5. "Don't be late," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We should save water. (Make question)
7. Ahmed is taller than his brother. (Make comparative)
8. The story is more interesting than that one. (Make more interesting)
9. Perhaps they will come. (Make passive)
10. The car is being washed now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would study harder. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next year, we will have finished our studies. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to close the window. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" he asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't use your phone in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure we will win. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would travel around the world. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. لقد زرت المتحف المصري منذ عام 2020. .....
2. يجب علينا إعادة تدوير النفايات للحفاظ على البيئة. .....
3. سألني الطبيب عن مدة أعراض المرض. .....
4. ربما يسافر أحمد إلى دبي الأسبوع القادم. .....
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يساعدنا في الكثير من الأعمال. .....

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people use the internet every day. .....
2. She has been learning English since she was young. .....
3. The teacher asked the students to open their books. .....
4. We should respect our parents. .....
5. If we save trees, we will have a better future. .....

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (kind / kindly / kindness)
2. This is one of the ..... beaches I have ever seen. (beautiful / more beautiful / most beautiful)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advice / advise / advising)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... player in the team. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... to win the competition. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is amazing. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... place I have ever visited. (peace / peaceful / paecefully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our teachers. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

التدريبيات الشاملة (11)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عيد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I ..... to music every evening.
   a) listen b) listens c) am listening d) listening
2. They ..... dinner now.
   a) eat b) are eating c) ate d) eaten
3. She said that she ..... to London the next day.
   a) go b) goes c) would go d) went
4. This is the ..... film I have ever seen.
   a) good b) better c) best d) more good
5. You ..... be careful when you cross the road.
   a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) shouldn't
6. My father has already ..... the bill.
   a) pay b) pays c) paid d) paying
7. If it ..... tomorrow, I won't go to the park.
   a) rain b) rains c) will rain d) rained
8. The children ..... football yesterday.
   a) play b) played c) are playing d) will play
9. The letter ..... before I came.
   a) has written b) was written c) had written d) wrote
10. Ali asked me where I ..... my mobile.
    a) put b) puts c) was putting d) had put
11. By next year, we ..... our new school.
    a) finish b) will finish c) have finished d) finished
12. If I ..... you, I would take the job.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
13. He denied ..... the money.
    a) steal b) stealing c) stole d) to steal
14. I wish I ..... taller.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... so much noise.
    a) make b) making c) to make d) made

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She have been to Aswan twice. .....
2. He asked me where did I go. .....
3. You mustn't to be late. .....
4. I got my watch repair yesterday. .....
5. This exercise is more easiest than the others. .....
6. They has already left. .....
7. I have live here since 2020. .....
8. The match have finished. .....
9. If I will know, I'll tell you. .....
10. He suggested to go to the park. .....
11. The door was locked by a key. .....
12. Somebody have taken my phone. .....
13. Don't forget to take your medicine. .....
14. I am sure he doesn't like cats. .....
15. She advised me to don't worry. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone cleaned the room yesterday. (have)
2. "Where are you from?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Perhaps it will rain tomorrow. (might)
4. They started watching TV two hours ago and they are still watching. (have been)
5. Nobody in the class is taller than Ahmed. (the tallest)
6. I will send the email before noon. (by)
7. Somebody will repair our car tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring your books. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he can't be at home. (can't)
10. She asked her friend to help her. (ask)
11. We will finish the project before Friday. (by)
12. They have already eaten breakfast. (yet)
13. It's possible that he will come. (might)
14. I wish I could play football well. (if only)
15. She wants to become a teacher. (would like)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have lost my book. (Make negative)
2. They finished the test. (Make negative)
3. Where do you go? (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I will help you." (Reported speech)
5. "Don't talk in class," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must protect the environment. (Make question)
7. Omar is taller than his brother. (Make comparative)
8. The story is more interesting than that one. (Make more interesting)
9. Perhaps they will visit us tomorrow. (Make passive)
10. The car is being washed now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would study harder. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next year, we will have finished our studies. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to take the umbrella. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" she asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't use your phone in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure we will succeed. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would travel around the world. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. ذهبنا إلى الإسكندرية منذ ثلاث سنوات.
2. يجب علينا توفير الماء للحفاظ على البيئة.
3. سألني المعلم أين كنت البارحة.
4. ربما يسافر أحمد إلى الخارج العام القادم.
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يساعدنا في الكثير من المجالات.

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people use the internet every day.
2. She has been learning English since she was young.
3. The doctor asked the patient to take this medicine.
4. We should respect our teachers.
5. If we plant more trees, we will have cleaner air.

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (kind / kindly / kindness)
2. This is one of the ..... places I have ever visited. (beautiful / more beautiful / mort beautiful)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advice / advise / advising)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... player in the team. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... to win the competition. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is amazing. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... place I have ever seen. (peace / peaceful / peacefully)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our parents. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

80 التدريبيات الشاملة (12)
Comprehensive Grammar Revision (Units 1–6)

إعداد
مستر أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

A Choose the correct answer:

1. I ..... in this house since 2010.
   a) live b) lived c) am living d) have lived
2. We ..... our homework now.
   a) do b) does c) are doing d) did
3. They said that they ..... the match the day before.
   a) win b) won c) will win d) had won
4. This is the most exciting book I ..... .
   a) read b) have read c) am reading d) was reading
5. You ..... cross the road when the light is red.
   a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) shouldn't
6. My sister has already ..... her project.
   a) finish b) finishes c) finished d) finishing
7. If it ..... tomorrow, we will stay at home.
   a) rains b) will rain c) rain d) rained
8. The children ..... in the garden when it started to rain.
   a) play b) played c) are playing d) were playing
9. The letter ..... before I left.
   a) was sent b) is sent c) has been sent d) sent
10. Ali asked me where I ..... my keys.
    a) put b) puts c) was putting d) had put
11. By next week, we ..... our exams.
    a) finish b) will finish c) have finished d) finished
12. If I ..... rich, I would travel around the world.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
13. He denied ..... the money.
    a) steal b) stealing c) stole d) to steal
14. I wish I ..... better at math.
    a) am b) was c) were d) be
15. It isn't necessary for you ..... late.
    a) arrive b) arriving c) to arrive d) arrived

B Correct the mistakes:

1. She have been in Aswan last winter. .....
2. He asked me where did I go. .....
3. You mustn't talk in the library. .....
4. I got my bike repairing yesterday. .....
5. This is more beautiful than any other place. .....
6. They have already ate dinner. .....
7. I have live here since 2017. .....
8. The match has started already. .....
9. If I will study hard, I'll pass. .....
10. He suggested to visit the zoo. .....
11. The door are locked by a key. .....
12. She have been studying since morning. .....
13. Don't forget to taking your medicine. .....
14. I am sure he isn't at home. .....
15. She advised me not to worry. .....

C Rewrite using the words in brackets:

1. Someone left the door open. (have)
2. "What time is it?" he asked me. (reported question)
3. Perhaps it will rain next week. (might)
4. They started cooking an hour ago and they are still cooking. (have been)
5. Nobody in the team is older than Ibrahim. (the oldest)
6. I will send the report before Friday. (by)
7. Somebody will repair our printer tomorrow. (get)
8. It isn't necessary for you to bring your ID. (needn't)
9. I'm sure he can't be in the cinema. (can't)
10. She asked her brother to help her. (ask)
11. We will finish the project next week. (by)
12. They have already eaten lunch. (yet)
13. It's possible that he will come. (might)
14. I wish I could speak English fluently. (if only)
15. She wants to be a doctor. (would like)

D Do as shown between brackets:

1. I have lost my bag. (Make negative)
2. They finished the project. (Make negative)
3. Where do you live? (Ask a question)
4. He said, "I will call you." (Reported speech)
5. "Don't talk in class," the teacher said. (Reported command)
6. We must save water. (Make question)
7. Ahmed is taller than his brother. (Make comparative)
8. The story is more interesting than that one. (Make more interesting)
9. Perhaps they will come. (Make passive)
10. The car is being washed now. (Change into passive)
11. If I were you, I would apologize. (Type 2 Conditional)
12. By next year, we will have finished our work. (Ask a question)
13. She has already left. (Make negative)
14. Don't forget to take your umbrella. (Change into passive)
15. "Where did you go?" he asked me. (Reported question)
16. You mustn't use your phone in class. (Make question)
17. He has been playing football since morning. (Use "for")
18. The shop was closed yesterday. (Change into active)
19. I'm sure we will succeed. (Make negative)
20. If I were rich, I would help the poor. (Type 2 Conditional)

E Translation:

① Translate into English:

1. أشاهد التلفاز كل مساء.
2. يجب علينا الحفاظ على نظافة المدينة.
3. طلب مني الطبيب أخذ هذا الدواء ثلاث مرات يومياً.
4. ربما يزورنا عمي الأسبوع القادم.
5. الذكاء الاصطناعي يساعدنا في حياتنا اليومية.

② Translate into Arabic:

1. Many people use smartphones every day.
2. She has been learning English since she was young.
3. The teacher asked the students to be quiet.
4. We should recycle paper to save trees.
5. If we work hard, we will achieve our goals.

F Choose the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My father is a ..... man. He helps everyone. (kind / kindly / kindness)
2. This is one of the ..... places I have ever visited. (beautiful / more beautiful / most beautiful)
3. She gave me some ..... about how to study. (advice / advise / advising)
4. The doctor gave him some ..... for his pain. (medicine / medical / medically)
5. He is the ..... player in the team. (good / better / best)
6. Ahmed is ..... than his brother. (tall / taller / tallest)
7. We were ..... to win the competition. (excite / exciting / excited)
8. The ..... of this story is amazing. (begin / beginning / begins)
9. My brother is interested in ..... music. (play / playing / played)
10. This is the most ..... book I have ever read. (excite / exciting / excited)
11. He is ..... enough to lift the heavy box. (strong / stronger / strongest)
12. The ..... of the building was wonderful. (design / designing / designed)
13. She has been ..... for two hours. (study / studying / studied)
14. We must be ..... to our parents. (obedient / obedience / obediently)
15. I need to improve my ..... skills. (communicate / communication / communicating)

نهاية المذكرة

نتمنى لكم دوام التوفيق والنجاح

والله ولي التوفيق

إعـداد

مستـر

أحمد عبد الفتاح محمد

المستر الصعيدى

ايـزي انجليزى

موبايل & واتس

01095006994